

UNDERSTANDING

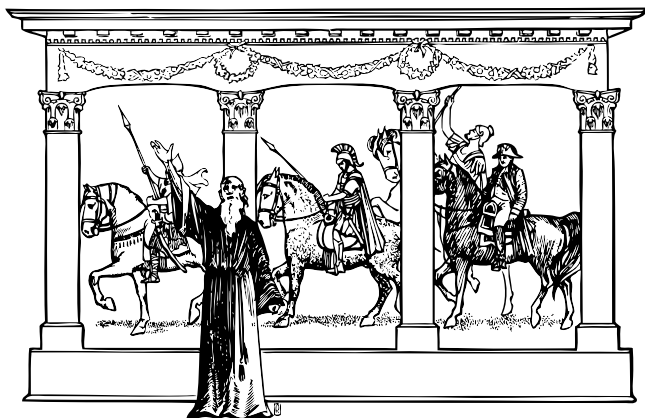
# Daniel

AND THE

# Revelation

*A simplified verse by verse  
explanation of Prophecy*

**The Complete Biblical books of Daniel and  
the Revelation; Plus Charts; Study Aids; Infor-  
mation on the Ancient Hebrew Sanctuary, and  
Amazing Time Prophecies.**



***Understanding Daniel and the Revelation***

*Plus supplementary material*

*By P. G. Temple*

*Second Edition 2011*



**“Thy Word is a lamp unto my feet,  
and a light unto my path.”**

**— Psalm 119:105**

**These Books are Available in single copy  
and case-lots from:**

**“The Foundations and Pillars Ministry”**

**1204 Besstown Rd**

**Beersheba Springs TN 37305**

# Contents

The 2300 Days	5
---------------	---

Introduction	6
--------------	---

## THE BOOK OF DANIEL

Chapter 1: The Captive Children	8
---------------------------------	---

Chapter 2: The Great Image	17
----------------------------	----

Chapter 3: The Fiery Furnace	42
------------------------------	----

Chapter 4: The Mad King	51
-------------------------	----

Chapter 5: Belshazzar's Feast	58
-------------------------------	----

Chapter 6: Daniel in the Lion's Den	68
-------------------------------------	----

Chapter 7: Awesome Beasts of Prophecy	75
---------------------------------------	----

Chapter 8: The Ram and the He-goat	92
------------------------------------	----

Chapter 9: Daniel's Prayer	104
----------------------------	-----

Chapter 9: Time Prophecy Explained	109
------------------------------------	-----

Chapter 10: Gabriel comes to Help	117
-----------------------------------	-----

Chapter 11: 'The Latter Days'	123
-------------------------------	-----

Chapter 12: Michael Stands Up!	158
--------------------------------	-----

## THE REVELATION

Chapter 1: John on Patmos	166
---------------------------	-----

Chapter 2: Letters to God's People	175
------------------------------------	-----

Chapter 3: Letters Continued	183
------------------------------	-----

Chapter 4: The Throne & the Book	191
----------------------------------	-----

Chapter 5: Worthy is the Lamb	196
-------------------------------	-----

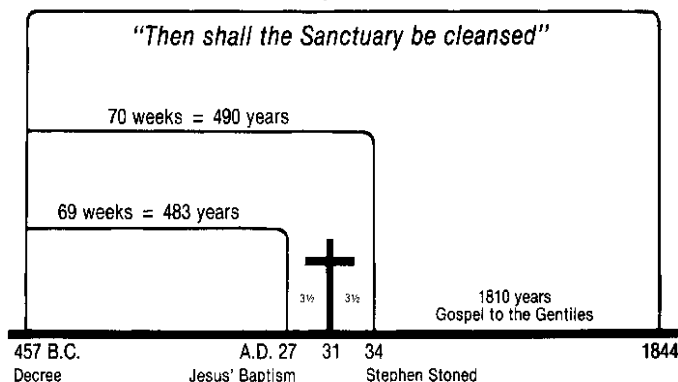
Chapter 6: The Seven Seals	200
----------------------------	-----

Chapter 7: The Four Angels	209
Chapter 8: The Seven Trumpets	215
Chapter 9: The Seven Trumpets 2	223
Chapter 10: The Mighty Angel	230
Chapter 11: The Two Witnesses	234
Chapter 12: The Woman and the Dragon	242
Chapter 13: The Beast, the Image and the Mark	249
Chapter 14: Three Angel's Messages	259
Chapter 15: Seven Vials of Wrath	269
Chapter 16: Seven Last Plagues	272
Chapter 17: The Woman and the Beast	281
Chapter 18: Fall of Great Babylon	287
Chapter 19: Jesus Rides Forth	292
Chapter 20: The Dragon's End	297
Chapter 21: A Wonderful Future	304
Chapter 22: Behold I Come Quickly	309

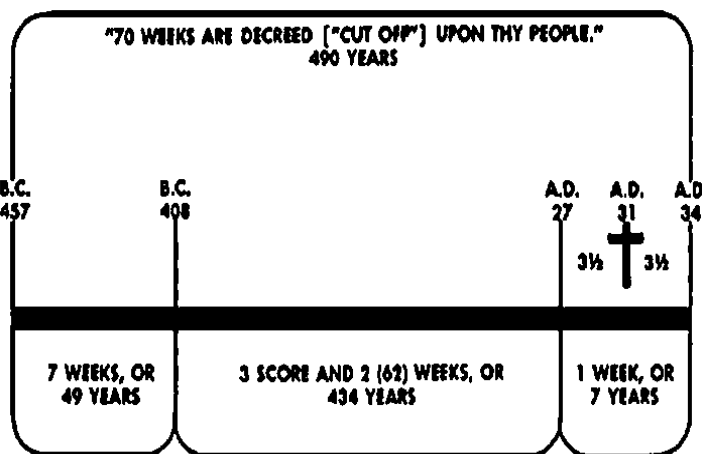
## **APPENDICES**

Appendix A 1: Light from the Ancient Sanctuary:	314
Appendix A 2: The Ceremonies and Feasts	329
Appendix B: Amazing Time Prophecies:	350
Appendix C: Seven Rules of Biblical Understanding:	356
Appendix D: Miller's Rules of Interpretation:	360
Appendix E: The Science of Prayer	364

## 2300 Days — Years



## The 2300 Days of Daniel 8 and 9



A chart of the "seventy weeks" which were decreed to God's people. Christ's advent proved the prophecy true.

## ***INTRODUCTION***

Many who read the Bible fail to realize that it is actually all one story from beginning to end. It is the story of this planet; its origin and destiny. The story of rebellion and terrible loss but more than this, it is the story of a most precious gift—a King's ransom—made to offer mankind a second chance to return to loyalty to their loving heavenly Father.

Woven throughout the Bible is an amazing series of predictions we call prophecy. Again few realize that these prophecies really connect together to tell the same story. The Bible is a history book, it tells the past—but like no other history book—it tells the present and future just as clearly.

Although prophecy is scattered all through the Bible, two books focus almost entirely on symbolic representations; these are Daniel and The Revelation. Written centuries apart, we nonetheless see that they actually compose one book, each helping to explain the other in a way that only an omnipotent God could do.

There is a choice to be made by every person living on this earth, and we are making that choice day by day whether we realize it or not. It is the choice of obedience or rebellion; righteousness or sin; life or death. The study of these prophetic books will reveal to us the players in the great drama now preparing for their final act in which all who live must decide where loyalty will be placed.

“And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.” —Joshua 24:15

## **CHURCH & STATE**

**In order for mankind to truly return to God with his whole heart, it is absolutely necessary that the individual have freedom of choice in regard to worship and religion so as to be able to follow his conscience and be led of God. The ONLY worship and service acceptable to God is true hearted service; anything forced or pretended is an abomination before God. "Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind." Romans 14:5.**

**Because only those who turn to God with this whole-hearted and fully persuaded service can be part of God's kingdom at the end of this world's history, Satan has always been at work to inspire people to seek to force and rule the consciences of their fellow beings. When religious powers fail to find enough force to do this, then civil power is sought and the combination of church and state used to crush out free religious inquiry, and cast down any who would seek to serve God according to the dictates of their conscience.**

**Prophecy tells the story of this desolating work which has arisen over and over again to trample rights and freedom underfoot and bathe the world in the blood of martyrs. It warns clearly that we are already on the verge of the biggest confederacy to do this very thing again and shows us behind the scenes the powers bringing it to pass. Study this book prayerfully, and carefully, for deception is rampant and we must be sure to be found on the right side of this conflict soon to hit the world.**

**"And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God. And they sang the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb." —  
Revelation 15:2-3**

## The Book of Daniel



**My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut  
the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me:  
Daniel 6:22**



## The Captive Children

**“In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it. And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of God: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.” Daniel 1:1, 2**

Time and time again, Israel turned their backs, on the God of their fathers, becoming enchanted by the exciting festivals and holidays of the pagans nearby.

Long had the Lord pled with the nation of Israel, through prophets and providential happenings, to return from their apostasy and idol worship that they copied from the Pagans around them, but they did not remain faithful to Him.

God had allowed the nation to become divided into two parts after the reign of Solomon. Israel had fallen years before to the Assyrians, and now the forces of Babylon under the young prince Nebuchadnezzar were threatening Jerusalem. They were warned by God’s prophets that Jerusalem would be taken.

***Siege of Jerusalem:*** Like one conscious of uttering only well-known truth, Daniel proceeds at once to state a variety of particulars by which his accuracy could be tested. The overthrow of Jerusalem recorded here was predicted by Jeremiah, and was accomplished in 606 BC (Jeremiah 25:8-11.)

(The date 606 BC is widely supported by Ussher, Hales, and other chronologists, but more recent research by archeologists favors the date 605. This apparently more accurate date, however, in no way affects the calculation of prophetic periods presented here, for it should be remembered that the Jews and other ancients counted both the first and last

years of a period.)

Jeremiah places this captivity in the fourth year of Jehoiakim, Daniel in the third. This seeming discrepancy is explained by the fact that Nebuchadnezzar set out on his expedition near the close of the third year of Jehoiakim, from which point Daniel reckons. But the king did not accomplish the subjugation of Jerusalem until about the ninth month of the year following, from which year Jeremiah reckons. Jehoiakim, though bound for the purpose of being taken to Babylon, humbled himself and was permitted to remain as ruler in Jerusalem, tributary to the king of Babylon.

This was the first time Jerusalem was taken by Nebuchadnezzar. Twice subsequently the city revolted, but was recaptured by the same king, and more severely dealt with each succeeding time. The second overthrow was during the time of Jehoiachin, son of Jehoiakim, when all the sacred vessels were either taken or destroyed, and the best of the inhabitants were led with the king into captivity. The third was under Zedekiah, when the city endured a formidable siege. During its continuance for a year and a half, the inhabitants of the city suffered all the horrors of extreme famine.

At length the garrison and the king attempted to escape from the city, but they were captured by the Chaldeans. The sons of the king were slain before his face. His eyes were put out, and he was taken to Babylon. Thus was fulfilled the prediction of Ezekiel that he should be carried to Babylon, and die there, yet he should not see the place. (Ezekiel 12:13.) The city and temple were at this time utterly destroyed, and the entire population of the country, with the exception of a few husbandmen, were carried captive to Babylon, in 586 BC

Such was God's passing testimony against sin; not that the Chaldeans were the favorites of Heaven, but that God made use of them to punish the iniquities of His people. Had the Israelites been faithful to God, and kept His Sabbath, Jerusalem would have stood forever. (Jeremiah 17:24-27.) But they departed from Him, and He allowed them to be

captured. They profaned the sacred vessels by bringing idols into the temple; therefore God allowed these vessels to be further profaned by letting them go as trophies to heathen shrines abroad.

Nebuchadnezzar also took captives from the royal family. About this time, Nebuchadnezzar's father, the King Nabopolassar, died and he returned to Babylon quickly to secure his throne. He left some special orders:

**"And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes; Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans." Daniel 1:3, 4**

Daniel and his three friends, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were among these captives taken away from their homes to Babylon. They were just youths at the time.

When they arrived in the Great City of Babylon, they were given over to the Prince of the Eunuchs who was to see that they were educated. For three years they were to study in the schools of what was then the most advanced kingdom on earth. After their training they were to go in before the King, who would assign them duties in his government. It seemed things were looking up for the captive children from Jerusalem.

**"And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king's meat, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king. Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishael, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abednego." Daniel 1:5-7**

But then came a big problem! The Hebrew boys were given new names honoring the Babylonian idol-gods.

However, it seems that he took no means to compel his royal captives to change their religion. Provided they had some religion, he seemed to be satisfied, whether it was the religion he professed or not. The change of their names to signify some connection with heathen worship may have been more to avoid the use of Jewish names by the Chaldeans than to indicate any change of sentiment or practice on the part of those to whom these names were given.

This change of names was probably made on account of the signification of the words. In the Hebrew, Daniel signified, "judge for God;" Hananiah, "gift of the Lord;" Mishael, "who is what God is;" and Azariah, "whom Jehovah helps." Since these names had some reference to the true God and signified some connection with His worship, they were changed to names which had definitions linking them to the heathen divinities and worship of the Chaldeans. Thus Belteshazzar, the name given to Daniel, signified "prince of Bel;" Shadrach, "servant of Sin" (the moon god); Meshach, "who is what Aku is" (Aku being the Sumerian equivalent of Sin, the name of the moon god); and Abednego, "servant of Nebo."

However, they were to be fed straight from the King's own table and be given the King's wine to drink. This was a great honor the King had bestowed on those who were his captive slaves, but Daniel recognized a problem.

**"But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself." Daniel 1:8**

Daniel 'purposed in his heart', he made up his mind that come what may, he was not going to eat the rich food and meats from the King's table, nor was he going to drink his alcoholic wine.

**"Now God had brought Daniel into favour and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs. And the prince of the eunuchs said unto Daniel, I fear my lord the king, who hath appointed your meat and your drink: for why should he see your faces worse liking than the children which are of your**

**sort? then shall ye make me endanger my head to the king. Then said Daniel to Melzar, whom the prince of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink.” Daniel 1:9-12**

He spoke to Melzar, the man that had been put in charge of himself and his three friends, and asked that they be allowed to have ‘pulse’, fruits and vegetables for their diet and plain water to drink.

Now the Bible tells us that God had caused the Prince of the Eunuchs that had charge over Daniel to be very fond of him. But this request seemed impossible!

“What do you think will happen to me, if the King sees you not looking as ruddy and healthy as the rest of the young men? Why, he will have my head!”

Why did Daniel and the three faithful worshippers of the God of Heaven not want to have the King’s diet of rich, succulent dainties, and his alcoholic wine? There were several reasons; and these reasons are important to you and me as well.

One of the reasons was that the king’s meat was first offered before idols and blessed by the heathen priests. To partake of it would be a form of worship to these idols. Daniel and his friends knew well, that this decision could cost them their lives; but they determined that come what may, they would be faithful to their God.

Another reason was that most of the king’s meat was from animals that God had declared in the Holy Scriptures to be unclean and defiling and not to be used as food. In the Holy Scriptures, God had shown the difference between clean and unclean animals and that the unclean were not to be eaten. (See Leviticus 11)

The next reason was that Daniel knew that a simple vegetarian diet with plenty of pure water to drink, was the healthiest diet and he wanted to keep his mind alert. Daniel knew that there in the heathen court of the King of Babylon, would be many temptations for his companions and himself. He knew that he could depend on God to give

them strength to be faithful, but that if he did not do his part to follow God's rules of health and keep his mind alert, he would be in real danger.

So Daniel had proposed a test:

**"Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink. Then let our countenances be looked upon before thee, and the countenance of the children that eat of the portion of the king's meat: and as thou seest, deal with thy servants. So he consented to them in this matter, and proved them ten days."** Daniel 1:12-14.

The word translated 'pulse' here in this verse, does not just refer to beans and peas. The menu for which Daniel asked and which he received was made up of cereals, legumes, fruits, nuts, and vegetables, a vegetarian diet of good variety, together with the universal drink for man and beast, clear water.

Melzar agreed to try the boys for ten days. They could have their strange diet, and after the test he figured they would see that the King's diet was much better and they would agree to that.

The ten days passed; the other captives all gorged themselves on the rich meats and spicy dainties, washed down with goblets of the finest vintage wines; while Daniel and his friends confidently occupied the one table with bread, fruit and vegetables, and plain water upon it.

The day came when Melzar made his inspection, lining up the captives to evaluate their health.

**"And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat. Thus Melzar took away the portion of their meat, and the wine that they should drink; and gave them pulse. As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams."** Daniel 1:15-17.

Now the Bible lets us in on another important secret; after the three years of intense schooling were completed, the graduates were brought in before the King himself to

have their final exams.

**“Now at the end of the days that the king had said he should bring them in, then the prince of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar. And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king. And in all matters of wisdom and understanding, that the king enquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm.” Daniel 1:18-20**

These were the best educated men in the world at that time; and Daniel and his three friends were ten times smarter!

Would you like to be ten times smarter? Well, that diet of Daniel's, plain fruits, grains and vegetables, simply prepared and lots of pure water will definitely help you.

There is another secret also; when we ‘purpose in our hearts’ to follow God and obey both His physical and His moral laws, then He will bless us in whatever we undertake. With His blessing and guidance it is easy to be ten times smarter.

**“And Daniel continued even unto the first year of King Cyrus.” Daniel 1:21**

He lived to a ripe old age also and remained physically and mentally active.

### **Further Thoughts:**

“Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come.” 1 Corinthians 10:11

The Bible is not just a story book of history; everything in it has a message for our days here at the end of time. If it was important for Daniel to abstain from rich and unhealthy foods and beverages, how much more is it important to us, who expect shortly to be facing the trials and tests of the closing up of God's work for planet earth?

In our day it seems customary to live to indulge in every kind of unhealthy habit and consider such indulgence a ‘treat’. At a time when animal food has been clearly

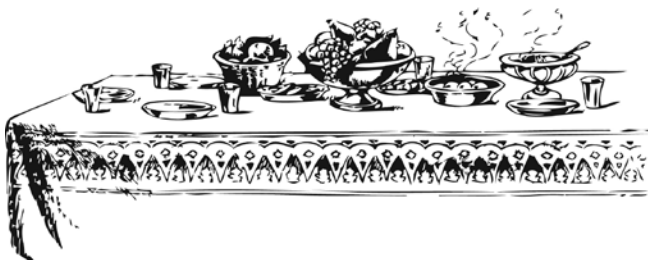
demonstrated to be unnecessary to human nutrition, we still hear from 'official' sources about the importance of protein in the diet with the emphasis placed on animal flesh.

Yet never has there been a time in history when animal products were more objectionable. Because of the factory farm methods of raising food animals and the unnatural diet fed to them, disease is rampant in food animals sent to the slaughter houses to appear on our tables. Mad Cow and other deadly scourges have emerged from the shadows to take their toll in the lives of men, women and even children.

Careful and unbiased researchers have found that most of the diseases bringing misery and suffering to people of our day, have at least some of their roots in the use of animal flesh and animal products for food.

The message of Daniel 1 is a message for today. A simple diet of fruits, vegetables, grains, seeds and nuts with adequate pure water, will still work the wonders today that it did for the four youth in Babylon. Also such a diet will protect us from much, if not most, of the diseases that are crowding our hospitals and doctor's clinics with suffering humanity, seeking, too often in vain, to obtain relief through chemical drugs and surgery.

Take heed of the lesson; pray for strength and guidance and start today to put it into effect in your life: you will be glad that you did.



**"Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God."**

**1 Corinthians 10:31**



## A Mysterious Dream

**“And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, wherewith his spirit was troubled, and his sleep brake from him.” Daniel 2:1**

Daniel was carried into captivity in the first year of Nebuchadnezzar. For three years he was placed under instructors, during which time he would not, of course, be reckoned among the wise men of the kingdom, nor take part in public affairs. Yet in the second year of Nebuchadnezzar, the transactions recorded in this chapter took place.

How, then, could Daniel be brought in to interpret the king's dream in his second year? The explanation lies in the fact that Nebuchadnezzar reigned for two years conjointly with his father, Nabopolassar. From this point the Jews reckoned, while the Chaldeans reckoned from the time he began to reign alone on the death of his father. It appears that the next year after Daniel had completed his preparation to participate in the affairs of the Chaldean empire, the providence of God brought him into sudden and remarkable prominence throughout the kingdom.

Babylon, the first world empire, was the greatest, richest, and most influential of all the empires in the then known civilized world. It also had the most powerful king. This leader of men had managed by sheer force to put down his enemies one by one, until his kingdom stood as the Queen of nations.

In the second year of his reign, King Nebuchadnezzar went to bed wondering just how long his kingdom would endure. He wanted to know about the future. That night, God looked down from heaven and chose to entrust this benevolent dictator with a look into the future.

The King had a strange dream and when he awoke he was really upset. He couldn't remember the dream. But he knew it was important.

## The Great Image of Daniel 2

HEAD of GOLD

**BABYLON**

605 - 539 B.C.

BREAST of SILVER

**MEDO-  
PERSIA**

539 - 331 B.C.

THIGHS of BRASS

**GREECE**

331 - 168 B.C.

LEGS of IRON

**ROME**

168 B.C. - A.D. 476

FEET of IRON & CLAY

**DIVIDED NATIONS  
OF EUROPE**

A.D. 476-2nd. ADVENT



**“Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. And the king said unto them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.” Daniel 2:2, 3**

He sent for his wise men and magicians and told them he had dreamed a dream and was anxious to know the meaning of it.

**Wise men = psychics.**

**Magicians = casters of spells, witches.**

**Astrologers = Foretelling future by star charts, fortune tellers.**

**Sorcerers = Claim to communicate with the dead, Spiritualists.**

**Chaldeans = Philosophers of psychic divination, numerology etc.**

**“Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.” Daniel 2:4**

It is clear that these ancient magicians and astrologers seem to have been clever in getting enough information to be able to give answers in such a vague manner that they would seem right whichever way the events turned out. Now, true to their cunning instincts, they called upon the king to make known to them his dream. If they could get full information respecting this, they could easily agree on some interpretation which would not endanger their reputation. They spoke to the king in Syriac, a dialect of the Chaldean language which was used by the educated and cultured classes. From this point to the end of Daniel 7, the record continues in Chaldaic, the language spoken by the king.

**“The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation thereof, ye shall receive of me**

**gifts and rewards and great honour: therefore shew me the dream, and the interpretation thereof. They answered again and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation of it.” Daniel 2:5-7**

These men claimed to have access to all the secrets of the living and the dead, past and future, including the knowledge of the gods. This was not an unreasonable request the king was asking of them, if all their boastful claims were true.

It is important to realize that in all the ages of earth's history Satan has tried to duplicate the powers of God but his counterfeits do not come close to the 100% accuracy of God's prophetic Word.

**“The king answered and said, I know of certainty that ye would gain the time, because ye see the thing is gone from me. But if ye will not make known unto me the dream, there is but one decree for you: for ye have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can shew me the interpretation thereof.” Daniel 2:8, 9**

The wise men and magicians were confident that they could easily make up an interpretation to please the king if they knew the dream, but no-one could dare to make up the dream as well!

**“The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter: therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean. And it is a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.” Daniel 2:10-11**

“Tell us the dream, and we'll tell you what it means,” pleaded the magicians. “Nobody can tell you what your dream was. No king ever asked such an unreasonable thing!”

**“For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise men of Babylon.” Daniel 2:12.**

It was obvious to the king their claims were only idle

tales; they couldn't do it. They even complained that the King was being unreasonable and this threw Nebuchadnezzar into a fury. He was so angry, he shouted: "Kill all these wise men and magicians!" Some have denounced Nebuchadnezzar in this matter, as a heartless, unreasonable tyrant. But what did these magicians profess to be able to do? Reveal hidden things; foretell events; make known mysteries entirely beyond human understanding, by supernatural means.

There was therefore nothing unjust in Nebuchadnezzar's demand that they should make known his dream. When they declared that none but the gods, whose dwelling was not with flesh, could make known the king's matter, they admitted they had no communication with these gods, and knew nothing beyond what human wisdom could reveal.

**"And the decree went forth that the wise men should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain."**  
**Daniel 2:13**

The soldiers started collecting all the magicians to execute them.

**"Then Daniel answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the captain of the king's guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise men of Babylon: He answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, Why is the decree so hasty from the king? Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel."**  
**Daniel 2:14, 15**

Daniel and his friends were to die too because they were among the wise men and magicians. "Why does the King want to kill all his wise men," he asked.

It was strange that Daniel and his companions, declared by the king ten times better than all his magicians and astrologers, were not called first in this matter. But God had a reason for this. Had the king called on Daniel at the first to make known the matter, the magicians would not have been brought to the test. But God would give the heathen systems of the Chaldeans the first chance. He would let them try and fail, that they might be the better prepared

to acknowledge His intervention when He should finally manifest His power in behalf of His captive servants, and for the honor of His name.

Daniel, first learning of the situation when the executioners come for his arrest, asked for time that he might consult the God whose dwelling was not with men, and pray for wisdom to make the dream known to the king.

**“Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would shew the king the interpretation.” Daniel 2:16**

The king agreed to give Daniel time to consider the matter; a privilege which probably none of the magicians could have obtained, as the king had already accused them of preparing false words, and seeking to gain time for this very purpose.

**“Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions: That they would desire mercies of the God of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven.” Daniel 2:17-19**

Daniel at once went to his three companions, and asked them to unite with him in asking light from the God of heaven concerning this secret. He could have prayed alone and doubtless would have been heard, but in the union of God's people there is prevailing power. The promise tells us that when two or three shall agree as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of the Father which is in heaven. (Matthew 18:19, 20.)

### **Daniel's Hymn of Praise:**

**“Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what is in the darkness,**

**and the light dwelleth with him. I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might, and hast made known unto me now what we desired of thee: for thou hast now made known unto us the king's matter." Daniel 2:20-23**

Daniel offered up praise to God for His gracious dealing with them. God is honored by our praise to Him for the things He has done for us, as well as by our petitions to Him for help. Let Daniel be our example in this. Let us not forget to return thanksgiving and praise for blessings given us. In the days of Christ's ministry on earth, did He not cleanse ten lepers, and only one returned to give Him thanks? "But where," asks Christ sorrowfully, "are the nine?" Luke 17:17.

Daniel had the utmost confidence in what had been shown him. He did not first go to the king to see if what had been revealed to him was indeed the king's dream, but he immediately praised God for having answered his prayer.

Although the matter was revealed to Daniel, he did not take the honor to himself, as though it were by his prayers alone that the answer had come. He included his friends in his thanksgiving. It was, said he, "what we desired of Thee," and Thou hast made it "known unto us."

**"Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise men of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him; Destroy not the wise men of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will shew unto the king the interpretation. Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him, I have found a man of the captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation." Daniel 2:24, 25**

Daniel's first plea was for the wise men of Babylon. Destroy them not, for the king's secret is revealed, he implored. True, it was through no merit of theirs or their heathen systems of divination that this revelation was made. They were worthy of as much condemnation as before. But their own confession of utter impotence in the matter was humiliation enough for them, and Daniel was anxious that

they should so far partake of the benefits shown him as to have their lives spared. They were saved because there was a man of God among them.

**“The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, Art thou able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof? Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, The secret which the king hath demanded cannot the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, shew unto the king; But there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days. Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these;” Daniel 2:26-28**

“Art thou able to make known unto me the dream?” was the king’s greeting to Daniel as he came into the royal presence. In spite of his previous acquaintance with this Hebrew, the king seemed to question his ability, so young and inexperienced, to make known a matter in which the aged and venerable magicians and soothsayers had utterly failed.

Daniel declared plainly that the wise men, the astrologers, the soothsayers, and the magicians could not make known this secret. It was beyond their power. Therefore the king should not be angry with them, nor put confidence in their vain superstitions. The prophet proceeded to make known the true God, who rules in heaven, and is the only revealer of secrets. He it is, said Daniel, who “maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days.”

**“As for thee, O king, thy thoughts came into thy mind upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to thee what shall come to pass. But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living, but for their sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, and that thou mightest know the thoughts of thy heart.” Daniel 2:29, 30**

Unlike some rulers, who fill up the present with folly and debauchery without regard to the future, the king



thought upon the days to come, with desire to know what would be in the years to follow.

It was partly for this reason that God gave him this dream. Yet God would not work for the king independently of His own people. Though He gave the dream to the king, He sent the interpretation through one of His acknowledged servants.

Daniel first disclaimed all credit for the interpretation, and then he sought to modify the king's natural feelings of pride in being thus noticed by the God of heaven. He informed him that although the dream had been given to him, it was not for his sake alone that the interpretation was sent, but also for their sakes through whom it should be given. God had some servants there, and it was for them that He was working. They were of more value in His sight than the mightiest kings and potentates of earth.

By this one act of revealing the king's dream to Daniel, God made known to the king the things he desired; He saved His servants who trusted in Him; He brought before the Chaldean nation the knowledge of Him who knows the end from the beginning; He poured contempt on the false systems of the soothsayers and magicians; He honored His own name and exalted His servants in their eyes. He also laid into history an important prophetic waymark for us who live in the time of the end of this world.

**"Thou, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof was terrible. This image's head was of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass, His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay." Daniel 2:31-33**

Nebuchadnezzar, a worshiper of the gods of the Chaldean religion, was an idolater. An image was an object which would at once command his attention and respect. Moreover, earthly kingdoms, which, as we shall hereafter see, were represented by this image, were objects of esteem and value in his eyes.

But how well suited was this image to convey a great

and needful truth to the mind of Nebuchadnezzar. Besides delineating the progress of events through the whole course of time for the benefit of His people, God would show Nebuchadnezzar the utter emptiness and worthlessness of earthly pomp and glory. How could this be more impressively done than by an image whose head was of gold? Below this head was a body composed of inferior metals descending in value until they reached their basest form in the feet and toes of iron mingled with miry clay.

**“Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.” Daniel 2:34, 35**

The whole was then dashed to pieces, and made like empty chaff. It was finally blown away where no place could be found for it. Then something durable and of heavenly worth occupied its place. So God would show to the children of men that earthly kingdoms are to pass away, and earthly greatness and glory, like a gaudy bubble, will break and vanish. In the place so long usurped by these, the kingdom of God shall be set up and have no end, while all who have an interest in that kingdom shall rest under the shadow of its peaceful wings forever and ever.

**“This is the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king. Thou, O king, art a king of kings: for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory. And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all. Thou art this head of gold.” Daniel 2:36-38**

Now opens one of the most comprehensive histories of world empires. Eight short verses of the inspired record tell the whole story, yet that story embraces the history of this world's pomp and power. A few moments will suffice to

commit it to memory; yet the period which it covers, beginning more than twenty-five centuries ago, reaches from that far-distant point, past the rise and fall of kingdoms, past the setting up and overthrow of empires, past cycles and ages, and past our own day to eternity. It is complete, yet it is so minute that it gives us the great outlines of earthly kingdoms from that time to this. Human wisdom never devised so brief a record that embraced so much. Human language never set forth in so few words such a great volume of historical truth. The finger of God is here. Let us heed the lesson well.

With what interest and astonishment must the king have listened as he was informed by the prophet that his kingdom was the golden head of the magnificent image? Daniel informed the king that the God of heaven had given him his kingdom, and made him ruler over all. This would restrain him from the pride of thinking that he had attained his position by his own power and wisdom, and would enlist the gratitude of his heart toward the true God.

**“And after thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to thee, and another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth.” Daniel 2:39**

Nebuchadnezzar reigned forty-three years, and was succeeded by the following rulers: His son, Evil-Merodach, two years; Neriglissar, his son-in-law, four years; Labo-rosoarchod, Neriglissar’s son, nine months, which, being less than one year, is not counted in the canon of Ptolemy; and lastly, Nabonidus, whose son, Belshazzar, grandson of Nebuchadnezzar, was associated with him on the throne.

“The proof of this association is contained in the cylinders of Nabonadius [Nabonidus] found at Mugheir, where the protection of the gods is asked for Nabu-nadid and his son Bel-shar-uzur, who are coupled together in a way that implies the co-sovereignty of the latter. (British Museum Series, Vol. I. pl. 68, no. 1.)

### **The Fall of Babylon**

In the first year of Neriglissar, only two years after the death of Nebuchadnezzar, that fatal war broke out between the Babylonians and the Medes, which resulted in the over-

throw of the Babylonian kingdom. Cyaxares, king of the Medes, who is called "Darius" in Daniel 5:31, summoned to his aid his nephew Cyrus of the Persian line. The war was prosecuted with uninterrupted success by the Medes and Persians, until in the eighteenth year of Nabonidus (the third year of his son Belshazzar), Cyrus laid siege to Babylon, the only city in the entire East which then held out against him.

The Babylonians, gathered within their seemingly impregnable walls, with provision on hand for twenty years, and land within the limits of their broad city sufficient to furnish food for the inhabitants and garrison for an indefinite period. They scoffed at Cyrus from their lofty walls, and derided his seemingly useless efforts to bring them into subjection. According to all human calculation, they had good ground for their feelings of security. Never, weighed in the balance of earthly probability, could that city be taken with the means of warfare then known. Hence they breathed as freely and slept as soundly as though no foe were waiting and watching around their beleaguered walls.

But God had decreed that the proud and wicked city should come down from her throne of glory. And when He speaks, what mortal arm can defeat His word?

In their feeling of security lay the source of their danger. Cyrus resolved to accomplish by strategy what he could not do by force. Learning of the approach of an annual festival in which the whole city would be given up to mirth and revelry, he chose that day as the time to carry his purpose into execution.

There was no entrance for him into that city unless he could find it where the River Euphrates entered and emerged, as it passed under the walls. He resolved to make the channel of the river his highway into the stronghold of his enemy. To do this, the water must be turned aside from its channel through the city. For this purpose, on the evening of the feast day above referred to, he detailed one body of soldiers to turn the river at a given hour into a large artificial lake, a short distance above the city; another to take their

station at the point where the river entered the city; and a third to take a position fifteen miles below, where the river emerged from the city.

The two latter military groups were instructed to enter the channel as soon as they found the river fordable, and in the darkness of the night explore their way beneath the walls, and press on to the palace of the king where they were to surprise and kill the guards, and capture or slay the king.

When the water was turned into the lake, the river soon became shallow enough to ford, and the soldiers followed its channel into the heart of the city of Babylon.

(See Herodotus, pp. 67-71; George Rawlinson, *The Seven Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World*, Vol. II, pp. 254-259; Humphrey Prideaux, *The Old and New Testament Connected in the History, of the Jews*, Vol. I, pp. 136, 137.)

But all this would have been in vain, had not the whole city given itself over on that eventful night to the most abandoned carelessness and presumption, a state of things upon which Cyrus calculated largely for the carrying out of his purpose. On each side of the river through the entire length of the city were walls of great height, and of equal thickness with the outer walls. In these walls were huge gates of brass, which, when closed and guarded, debarred all entrance from the river bed to any of the streets that crossed the river. Had the gates been closed at this time, the soldiers of Cyrus might have marched into the city, along the river bed, and then marched out again, for all that they would have been able to accomplish toward the subjugation of the place.

But the Lord had spoken and in the drunken revelry of that fatal night, these river gates were left open, as had been foretold by the prophet Isaiah years before in these words: "Thus saith the Lord to His anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two-leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut." Isaiah 45:1. The entrance of the Persian soldiers was not perceived. Many a cheek would have paled with terror, had the sudden going down of the river been noticed, and its

fearful import understood.

Many a tongue would have spread wild alarm through the city, had the dark forms of armed foes been seen stealthily treading their way to the citadel of their supposed security. But no one noticed the sudden subsidence of the waters of the river; no one saw the entrance of the Persian warriors; no one took care that the river gates should be closed and guarded; no one cared for aught but to see how deeply and recklessly he could plunge into the wild debauch. That night's dissipation cost the Babylonians their kingdom and their freedom. They went into their brutish revelry subjects of the king of Babylon; they awoke from it slaves to the king of Persia.

The soldiers of Cyrus first made known their presence in the city by falling upon the royal guards in the vestibule of the palace of the king. Belshazzar soon became aware of the cause of the disturbance, and died fighting for his life. This feast of Belshazzar is described in the fifth chapter of Daniel, and the scene closes with the simple record, "In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old."

The historian Prideaux says: "Darius the Mede, that is, Cyaxares, the uncle of Cyrus, took the kingdom; for Cyrus allowed him the title of all his conquests as long as he lived."

Humphrey Prideaux, *The Old and New Testament Connected in the History of the Jews*, Vol. I, p. 137.

Thus the first empire, symbolized by the head of gold on the great image, came to an ignoble end. It would naturally be supposed that the conqueror, becoming possessed of so noble a city as Babylon, far surpassing anything else in the world, would have taken it as the seat of his empire, and maintained it in its splendor. But God had said that the city should become a heap, and the habitation of the beasts of the desert; that its houses should be full of doleful creatures; that the wild beasts of the islands should cry in its desolate dwellings, and dragons in its pleasant palaces. (Isaiah 13:19-22.) It must first be deserted. Cyrus established a second

capital at Susa, a celebrated city in the province of Elam, east from Babylon, on the banks of the River Choaspes, a branch of the Tigris. This was probably done in the first year of his sole reign.

The pride of the Babylonians being particularly provoked by this act, in the fifth year of Darius Hystaspes, 517 BC, they rose in rebellion and brought upon themselves again the whole strength of the Persian Empire. The city was once more taken by strategy. Darius took away the brazen gates of the city, and beat down the walls from two hundred cubits to fifty cubits. This was the beginning of its destruction.

By this act, it was left exposed to the ravages of every hostile band. Xerxes, on his return from Greece, plundered the temple of Belus of its immense wealth, and then laid the lofty structure in ruins. Alexander the Great endeavored to rebuild it, but after employing ten thousand men two months to clear away the rubbish, he died from excessive drunkenness and debauchery, and the work was suspended.

In the year 294 BC, Seleucus Nicator built the city of New Babylon in the neighborhood of the old city, and took much of the material and many of the inhabitants of the old city, to build up and people the new. Now almost exhausted of inhabitants, neglect and decay were telling fearfully upon the ancient capital. The violence of Parthian princes hastened its ruin. About the end of the fourth century, it was used by the Persian kings as an enclosure for wild beasts. At the end of the twelfth century, according to a celebrated traveler, the few remaining ruins of Nebuchadnezzar's palace were so full of serpents and venomous reptiles that they could not be closely inspected without great danger. And today scarcely enough even of the ruins is left to mark the spot where once stood the largest, richest, and proudest city of the ancient world.

Thus the ruin of great Babylon shows us how accurately God fulfills His word, and makes the doubts of skepticism appear like willful blindness.

“After thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to

thee.”

The use of the word ‘kingdom’, shows that kingdoms, and not particular kings, are represented by the different parts of this image. Hence when it was said to Nebuchadnezzar, “Thou art this head of gold,” although the personal pronoun was used, the kingdom not the king himself was meant.

### **Medo-Persian Kingdom**

The succeeding kingdom, Medo-Persia, was indicated by the breast and arms of silver of the great image. It was to be inferior to the preceding kingdom. In what respect inferior? Not in power, for it conquered Babylon. Not in extent, for Cyrus subdued all the East from the Aegean Sea to the River Indus, and thus erected a more extensive empire. But it was inferior in wealth, luxury, and magnificence.

Viewed from a Scriptural standpoint, the principal event under the Babylonian Empire was the captivity of the children of Israel; under the Medo-Persian kingdom it was the restoration of Israel to their own land. At the taking of Babylon, Cyrus, as an act of courtesy, assigned the first place in the kingdom to his uncle, Darius, in 538 BC. But two years afterward Darius died, leaving Cyrus sole monarch of the empire. In this year, which closed Israel’s seventy years of captivity, Cyrus issued his famous decree for the return of the Jews and the rebuilding of their temple. This was the first installment of the great decree for the restoration and building again of Jerusalem (Ezra 6:14), which was completed in the seventh year of the reign of Artaxerxes, 457 BC, a date of much importance, as will hereafter be shown.

After a reign of seven years, Cyrus left the kingdom to his son Cambyses, who reigned seven years and five months, to 522 BC. Ten monarchs reigned between this time and the year 336 BC. The year 335 BC is set down as the first of Darius Codomannus, the last of the line of the old Persian kings. This man, according to Prideaux, was of noble stature, of goodly person, of the greatest personal



valor, and of a mild and generous disposition. It was his ill fortune to have to contend with one who was an agent in the fulfillment of prophecy, and no qualifications, natural or acquired, could make him successful in the unequal contest. Scarcely was he warm upon the throne, ere he found his formidable enemy, Alexander, at the head of the Greek soldiers, preparing to dismount him from it.

The cause and the particulars of the contest between the Greeks and the Persians we leave to histories especially devoted to such matters. Suffice it to say that the deciding point was reached on the field of Arbela in 331 BC, where the Grecians, though only one to twenty in number as compared with the Persians, won a decisive victory. Alexander became absolute lord of the Persian Empire to an extent never attained by any of its own kings.

### **Grecian Empire**

“Another third kingdom of brass . . shall bear rule over all the earth,” the prophet had said. Few and brief are the inspired words which involved a succession in world rulership. In the ever-changing political kaleidoscope, Grecia came into the field of vision, to be for a time the all-absorbing object of attention, as the third of what are called the universal empires of the earth.

After the battle which decided the fate of the empire, Darius endeavored to rally the shattered remnants of his army, and make a stand for his kingdom and his rights. But he could not gather out of all the host of his recently so numerous and well-appointed army, a force with which he deemed it prudent to hazard another engagement with the victorious Grecians. Alexander pursued him on the wings of the wind. Time after time Darius barely eluded the grasp of his swiftly following foe.

At length three traitors, Bessus, Nabarzanes, and Barsaentes, seized the unfortunate prince, shut him up in a close cart, and fled with him as their prisoner toward Bactria. It was their purpose, if Alexander pursued them, to purchase their own safety by delivering up their king. Hereupon

Alexander, learning of the dangerous position of Darius in the hands of the traitors, immediately put himself with the lightest part of his army upon a forced pursuit. After several days' hard march, he came up with the traitors. They urged Darius to mount on horseback for a more speedy flight. Upon his refusing to do this, they gave him several mortal wounds, and left him dying in the cart, while they mounted their steeds and rode away.

When Alexander arrived, he beheld only the lifeless form of the Persian king, who but a few months before was seated upon the throne of universal empire. Disaster, overthrow, and desertion had come suddenly upon Darius. His kingdom had been conquered, his treasure seized, and his family reduced to captivity. Now, brutally slain by the hand of traitors, he lay a bloody corpse in a rude cart. The sight of the melancholy spectacle drew tears from the eyes of even Alexander, familiar though he was with all the horrible happenings and bloody scenes of war. Throwing his cloak over the body, he commanded that it be conveyed to the ladies of the Persian royal family who were captives at Susa, and furnished from his own treasury the necessary means for a royal funeral.

When Darius died, Alexander saw the field cleared of his last formidable foe. Thenceforward he could spend his time in his own manner, now in the enjoyment of rest and pleasure, and again in the prosecution of some minor conquest. He entered upon a pompous campaign into India, because, according to Grecian fable, Bacchus and Hercules, two sons of Jupiter, whose son he also claimed to be, had done the same. With contemptible arrogance, he claimed for himself divine honors. He gave up conquered cities, freely and unprovoked, to the mercy of his bloodthirsty and licentious soldiery. He often murdered his friends and favorites in his drunken frenzies. He encouraged such excessive drinking among his followers that on one occasion twenty of them died as the result of their carousal.

At length, having sat through one long drinking spree, he was immediately invited to another, when, after drinking

to each of the twenty guests present, he twice drank, says history, incredible as it may seem, the full Herculean cup containing six of our quarts. He was seized with a violent fever, of which he died eleven days later, June 13, 323 BC, while yet he stood only at the threshold of mature life, in the thirty-second year of his age.

### Iron Monarchy of Rome

**“And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise.” Daniel 2:40.**

Thus far in the application of this prophecy there is a general agreement among expositors. That Babylon, Medo-Persia, and Greece are represented respectively by the head of gold, the breast and arms of silver, and the sides of brass, is acknowledged by all. But with as little ground for a diversity of views, there is strangely a difference of opinion as to what kingdom is symbolized by the fourth division of the great image; the legs of iron.

What kingdom succeeded Greece in the empire of the world, for the legs of iron denote the fourth kingdom in the series? The testimony of history is full and explicit on this point. One kingdom did this, and one only, and that was Rome. It conquered Grecia; it subdued all things; like iron, it broke in pieces and bruised.

Says Bishop Newton: “The four different metals must signify four different nations: and as the gold signified the Babylonians, and the silver the Persians, and the brass the Macedonians; so the iron cannot signify the Macedonians again, but must necessarily denote some other nation: and we will venture to say that there is not a nation upon earth, to which this description is applicable, but the Romans.”

Thomas Newton, *Dissertations on the Prophecies*, vol. I, p. 240.

Gibbon, following the symbolic imagery of Daniel, thus describes this empire: “The arms of the Republic, sometimes vanquished in battle, always victorious in war, advanced with rapid steps to the Euphrates, the Danube,

the Rhine, and the ocean; and the images of gold, or silver, or brass, that might serve to represent the nations and their kings, were successively broken by the iron monarchy of Rome.”

Edward Gibbon, *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, Vol. III, general observations following chap. 38, p. 634.

At the opening of the Christian Era, this empire took in the whole south of Europe, France, England, the greater part of the Netherlands, Switzerland, and the south of Germany, Hungary, Turkey, and Greece, not to speak of its possessions in Asia and Africa. Well therefore may Gibbon say of it:

“The empire of the Romans filled the world, and when that empire fell into the hands of a single person, the world became a safe and dreary prison for his enemies. . . . To resist was fatal, and it was impossible to fly.”

*Ibid.*, Vol. I, chap. 3, pp. 99, 100.

It will be noticed that at first the kingdom is described without question as strong as iron. This was the period of its strength, during which it has been likened to a mighty colossus bestriding the nations, conquering everything, and giving laws to the world. But this was not to continue.

**“And whereas thou sawest the feet and toes, part of potters’ clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay. And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken.” Daniel 2:41-42**

### Rome Divided

Rome, before its division into ten kingdoms, lost that iron vigor which it possessed to a superlative degree during the first centuries of its career. Luxury, with its accompanying effeminacy and degeneracy, the destroyer of nations as well as of individuals, began to corrode and weaken its iron sinews, and thus prepared the way for its disintegration into ten kingdoms.

### Iron and Clay

In this mixture of metal and mud we see a very unnatu-

ral situation, the strength of the iron is undermined by the brittleness of clay and the fact that they do not even stick together makes it even worse. But there is a deeper meaning in this symbol and we learn much by looking into it.

Iron is used in the Bible as a symbol of ruling power. (see: Psalms 2:9; Revelation 2:27) It stands for Civil or State power.

Clay is used in a figurative way in describing God's people or church.

Isaiah 64:8; "But now, O LORD, thou art our father; we are the clay, and thou our potter; and we all are the work of thy hand." (Also see: Jeremiah 18:1-6)

But here we do not see just clay; we are told it is miry or dirty clay. Miry clay denotes filthy or corrupted churches.

The combination of the iron and miry clay represents the mingling of State-craft and Priest-craft which is an abomination to God. The feet come into history close to the time of the beginning of the Papal supremacy of the 1260 years where the church ruled the secular governments and used them for her own corrupt ends.

The ten toes are also of this same material and our attention is called to them by the explicit mention of them in the prophecy. The Roman kingdom was finally divided into ten parts. However the ten toes of the image do not represent the ten divisions of the Roman Empire. We know this because in the division of the Roman Empire, three kingdoms were removed leaving only seven. This we do not see in the ten toes. We will address them later.

### **The Ten Toes**

The image of Daniel 2 is exactly parallel with the four beasts in the vision of Daniel 7. The fourth beast represents the same kingdom as do the iron legs of the image. The ten horns of the beast correspond naturally to the ten divisions of the Roman Empire. These horns are plainly declared to be ten kings (or kingdoms) which should arise, but here we are also told that 3 would be uprooted. It is only when we look to Revelation 17 that we find further information regard-

ing the final ten toes on the image and what they stand for.

Daniel and Revelation are actually one prophetic book with the first part having been given by Christ to Daniel and the second part having been given by Christ to John on Patmos. Any attempts to truly understand these prophetic books separately will yield poor results. In Revelation 17 we see a beast with seven heads and ten horns. The seven heads correspond with the seven kingdoms of the earth and the ten horns here are described: "And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast." Revelation 17:12

At the end of time there will be a confederacy of ruling powers that will have one mind and will give their power to the Beast for a short time. These correspond with the ten toes on the image of Daniel 2. They are not ten kingdoms, but one kingdom with ten kings. We will learn more of this later.

In Daniel's interpretation of the image he uses the words "king" and "kingdom" interchangeably meaning the same thing. In verse 44 he says that "in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom." This shows that at the time the kingdom of God is set up, there will exist this plurality of confederated kings acting as one kingdom and giving their power to the Beast.

### **The Ten Kingdoms**

This division of the Roman Empire was accomplished between AD 351 and 476, a hundred and twenty-five years, from about the middle of the fourth century to the last quarter of the fifth. The map of the Roman Empire during that time underwent many sudden and violent changes, and the paths of hostile nations charging upon its territory, crossed and recrossed each other in a labyrinth of confusion. But all historians agree in this, that out of the territory of Western Rome, ten separate kingdoms were ultimately established as follows: Huns, Ostrogoths, Visigoths, Franks, Vandals, Suevi, Burgundians, Heruli, Anglo-Saxons, and Lombards. The connection between these and some of the modern na-

tions of Europe, is still traceable in the names.

**“And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.” Daniel 2:43**

With Rome, fell the last of the world's universal empires. No other world kingdom was to succeed it, as it had the three which went before it. It was to continue until the kingdom of the stone smote it, upon its feet; broke them in pieces, and scattered them as the wind does ‘the chaff of the summer threshing-floor.’ Yet, through all this time, a portion of its strength was to remain. And so the prophet says, ‘And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken.’

Time and again men have dreamed of rearing on these dominions one mighty kingdom. Charlemagne tried it; Charles V tried it; Louis XIV tried it; Napoleon tried it; Hitler tried it; and none of them succeeded. A single verse of prophecy was stronger than all their hosts. ‘This shall not be,’ says the word of God. ‘This has not been,’ replies the book of history.

But then, another plan remains. If force cannot avail, diplomacy and reasons of state may. And so the prophecy foreshadows this when it says, ‘They shall mingle themselves with the seed of men’, i.e., marriages shall be formed, in hope thus to consolidate their power, and in the end, to unite these divided kingdoms into one. To avert future conflicts, benevolent rulers resorted to the expedient of intermarriage to ensure peace, until by the opening of the twentieth century it was asserted that every ranking hereditary ruler of Europe was related to the British royal family. And did this device succeed? No! World War I showed the futility of these attempts. The prophet answers: ‘They shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.’

Alliances may come, and it may appear that the iron and miry clay of the feet and toes of the great image have finally fused, but God said, “They shall not cleave one to

another.” It may seem that old animosities have disappeared, but “the Scripture cannot be broken.” John 10:35.

**“And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand forever. 45 Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.” Daniel 2:44-45**

The phrase, “shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom”, denotes a process, which God carries out in this time of the toes of the image, that takes place just before the Second Coming of Jesus. If it referred only to Christ’s coming, it would be worded; “In the days of these kings shall Christ return and destroy all the nations and rule forever”; but instead we see indicated, the development of Christ’s kingdom.

The coming kingdom! This ought to be the all-absorbing topic with the present generation. He who enters this kingdom shall dwell in it not merely for such a lifetime as men live in this present state. He shall not see it degenerate, or be overthrown by a succeeding and more powerful kingdom. No, he enters it to participate in all its privileges and blessings, and to share its glories forever, for this kingdom is not to “be left to other people.”

Are you ready? The terms of heirship are most liberal: “If ye be Christ’s, then are ye Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.” Galatians 3:29. Are you on terms of friendship with Christ, the coming King? Do you love His character? Are you choosing to walk humbly in His footsteps, and, by His enabling grace, obey His teachings? If not, read your fate in the cases of those in the parable, of whom it was said, “But those Mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay them before Me.” Luke 19:27.

There is to be no rival kingdom where you can find an



asylum if you remain an enemy to this, for God's kingdom is to occupy all the territory ever possessed by any and all of the kingdoms of this world, past or present. It is to fill the whole earth. Happy are they to whom the rightful Sovereign, the all-conquering King, can say at last, "Come, ye blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world." Matthew 25:34.

The 'Stone, cut out without Hands' represents the last remnant of God's faithful. It is Jesus that cuts them out and prepares them by the Holy Spirit. He polishes and perfects them through trial and tribulation, to be able to show them at last as His precious First-Fruits. (Also see Daniel 7:18; 27)

They carry forth the final message of mercy and warning that leads quickly to the Second Coming of Christ to take His faithful home. These will be translated without seeing death at Jesus' Second Coming.

The idea that the stone itself is Christ's coming is an overly simplistic and unbiblical view and does not fit the Bible evidence. Jesus cannot cut himself out of Mount Zion, which represents God's faithful saints. But Jesus uses the stone He cuts out to bring to an end the wicked reign of Satan and his cohorts forever.

**"Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation and sweet odours unto him. The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldest reveal this secret." Daniel 2:46, 47**

Nebuchadnezzar felt that he could accept this interpretation as a divine revelation; for to Daniel had been revealed every detail of the dream. The solemn truths conveyed by the interpretation of this vision of the night made a deep impression on the sovereign's mind, and in humility and awe he "fell upon his face, and worshipped."

Nebuchadnezzar saw clearly the difference between the wisdom of God, and the wisdom of the most learned men of his kingdom. In fulfillment of his promise of rewards, the king made Daniel a great man. A man is considered great

if he is a man of wealth; and we read that the king gave him many and great gifts. If in conjunction with riches a man has power, certainly in popular estimation he is considered a great man; and power was bestowed upon Daniel in abundant measure. He was made ruler over the province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon. Thus speedily and abundantly did Daniel begin to be rewarded for his fidelity to his own conscience and the requirements of God.

**“Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon. Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel sat in the gate of the king.” Daniel 2:48, 49**

Daniel did not become bewildered or elated by his signal victory and his wonderful advancement. He first remembered the three who were companions with him in anxiety respecting the king's matter. As they had helped him with their prayers, he determined that they should share his honors. At his request they were placed over the affairs of Babylon, while Daniel himself sat in the gate of the king. The gate was the place where councils were held, and where matters of chief importance were considered. The record is a simple declaration that Daniel became chief counselor to the king.

### **DANIEL 3**

## **The Fiery Furnace**

**“Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon. Daniel 3:1**

The king had acknowledged the power of God, saying to Daniel, “Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of

gods, . . . and a revealer of secrets.” For a time afterward, Nebuchadnezzar was influenced by the fear of God; but his heart was not yet cleansed from worldly ambition and a desire for self-exaltation. The prosperity attending his reign filled him with pride. In time he ceased to honor God, and resumed his idol worship with increased zeal and bigotry.

The words, “Thou art this head of gold,” had made a deep impression upon the ruler’s mind. The wise men of his realm, taking advantage of this and of his return to idolatry, proposed that he make an image similar to the one seen in his dream, and set it up where all might behold the head of gold, which had been interpreted as representing his kingdom.

Pleased with the flattering suggestion, he determined to carry it out, and to go even farther. Instead of reproducing the image as he had seen it, he would excel the original. His image should not deteriorate in value from the head to the feet, but should be entirely of gold; symbolic throughout of Babylon as an eternal, indestructible, all-powerful kingdom, which should break in pieces all other kingdoms and stand forever.

The King gave the orders and soon work began on an immense golden image that would tower 90 feet high on the plain of Dura. And he told all his people all over the world to come on a certain day and worship this huge image.

The fact that the image was sixty cubits high and six cubits wide is of great significance, for the number six and multiples of it were common in ancient Babylonia. Their great gods had numbers. The number of Anu, their highest god, was sixty, and that likewise was the number of Marduk or Bel, when he replaced Anu as head of the Babylonian pantheon.

The number six and multiples thereof are used in occult circles. Often it has evil or sexual connotations. Hex is the Greek word for six, and sex is the Latin word for six.

In Revelation 13:18 the number of the beast is given as 600-60-6. There are indications that six is the number chosen by the evil one as a symbol of himself.

In a number of alphabets, certain letters have numerical values, and at times those connected with the number 6 are of interest. In Latin we find the following:

I= 1

V= 5            6

X= 10

L= 50            60

C= 100

D= 500            600

Edwin Thiele, *Outline Studies in Daniel*, pp. 35-36

**"Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up. Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up." Daniel 3:2, 3**

Then decrees were sent, telling the important people all over the world to come on a certain day and worship this huge image. He probably sent Daniel somewhere else that day, but Daniel's 3 friends, Shadrack, Meshack, and Abednego were commanded to attend. They had been watching the construction of this great image, and they had been praying for courage to do what they must do.

**"Then an herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O people, nations, and languages, That at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up: And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down and worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up." Daniel 3:4-7**

The day came; the king and all his important men gathered to see the people worship the golden image on the plain of Dura.

“When you hear the music play,” he told the people, “Then you must bow down and worship My Image, or you will be thrown into the burning fiery furnace!”

Satan has always used seductive and fascinating music to further his ends and attract people to his false religions. Music can create a trance-state in the mind that opens the doors to satanic control.

Force is the last resort of every false religion. At first it tries attraction, as the king of Babylon tried the power of music and outward show. If these attractions, invented by men inspired by Satan, failed to make men worship the image, the hungry flames of the furnace were ready to consume them.

The music played and everybody bowed down; except Daniel’s 3 friends, Shadrack, Meshach, and Abednego. They would not worship any other god than the True God. There they stood as tall as they could. They didn’t even bend down to ‘tie their shoes’!

**“Wherefore at that time certain Chaldeans came near, and accused the Jews. They spake and said to the king Nebuchadnezzar, O king, live for ever. Thou, O king, hast made a decree, that every man that shall hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, shall fall down and worship the golden image: And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth, that he should be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. There are certain Jews whom thou hast set over the affairs of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego; these men, O king, have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.” Daniel 3:8-12**

On that eventful day the powers of darkness seemed to be gaining a great triumph. It seemed that the worship of the golden image might become connected permanently with the idolatry recognized as the state religion of the land.

Satan hoped thereby to defeat God's purpose of making the presence of captive Israel in Babylon a means of blessing to all the nations of heathendom.

But God decreed otherwise. Not all had bowed the knee to the idolatrous symbol of human power. In the midst of the worshipping multitude there were three men who were firmly resolved not thus to dishonor the God of heaven. Their God was King of kings and Lord of lords; they would bow to none other.

To Nebuchadnezzar, flushed with triumph, was brought the word that among his subjects there were some who dared disobey his mandate. Certain of the wise men, jealous of the honors that had been bestowed upon the faithful companions of Daniel, now reported to the king their flagrant violation of his wishes.

**"Then Nebuchadnezzar in his rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king. Nebuchadnezzar spake and said unto them, Is it true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up? Now if ye be ready that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the image which I have made; well: but if ye worship not, ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; and who is that God that shall deliver you out of my hands?" Daniel 3:13-15**

The king commanded that the men be brought before him. "Is it true," he inquired, "do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up?" He endeavored by threats to induce them to unite with the multitude. Pointing to the fiery furnace, he reminded them of the punishment awaiting them if they should persist in their refusal to obey his will. But firmly the Hebrews testified to their allegiance to the God of heaven, and their faith in His power to deliver. The act of bowing to the image was understood by all to be an act of worship. Such homage they could render to God alone.

As the three Hebrews stood before the king, he was convinced that they possessed something the other wise men of his kingdom did not have. They had been faithful in the performance of every duty. He would give them another trial. If only they would signify their willingness to unite with the multitude in worshipping the image, all would be well with them; “but if ye worship not,” he added, “ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.” Then with his hand stretched upward in defiance, he demanded, “Who is that God that shall deliver you out of my hands?”

**“Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.” Daniel 3:16**

The 3 Hebrews told the King that they would not worship the image, whether he put them in the furnace or not, and that their God would take care of them. Their faith strengthened as they declared that God would be glorified by delivering them, and with triumphant assurance born of implicit trust in God, they added, “But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.”

**“Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego: therefore he spake, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated. And he commanded the most mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace.” Daniel 3:19, 20**

When the king saw that his will was not received as the will of God, he was “full of fury,” and the form of his visage was changed against these men. Satanic attributes made his countenance appear as the face of a demon.

“Make the furnace seven times hotter, as hot as it can be, and Throw them in!” screamed the angry King, as he commanded the mighty men of his army to bind the worshipers of Israel’s God, preparatory to execution.

**“Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their other garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace. Therefore because the king’s commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.” Daniel 3:21-23**

He felt that it required more than ordinary power to deal with these noble men. His mind was strongly impressed that something unusual would interpose in their behalf, and his strongest men were ordered to deal with them. It was so hot that the soldiers who threw the men into the furnace were killed.

**“Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.” Daniel 3:24, 25**

But the Lord did not forget His own. As His witnesses were cast into the furnace, the Saviour revealed Himself to them in person, and together they walked in the midst of the fire. In the presence of the Lord of heat and cold, the flames lost their power to consume. Then the King turned pale. “Didn’t we throw three men, bound into the furnace? Look! I see four men, loose and walking in the furnace, and the fourth is like the Son of God.”

**“Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace, and spake, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, ye servants of the most high God, come forth, and come hither. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, came forth of the midst of the fire. And the**



**princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them." Daniel 3:26, 27**

And now, his own greatness and dignity forgotten, Nebuchadnezzar descended from his throne and, going to the mouth of the furnace, cried out for the three youth to come forth. They did, and they were not hurt; not even the smell of the fire was on them. Forgotten was the great golden image, set up with such pomp. In the presence of the living God, men feared and trembled.

Then the King sent a letter to all the world, saying that all people should reverence the God of the Hebrews. The God who saved His children from the Burning Fiery Furnace.

**"Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God." Daniel 3:28**

It was right for the king to make public confession, and to seek to exalt the God of heaven above all other gods; but in endeavoring to force his subjects to make the same confession of faith, and to show similar reverence, Nebuchadnezzar was exceeding his right as a temporal sovereign. He had no more right, either civil or moral, to threaten men with death for not worshipping God, than he had to make the decree consigning to the flames all who refused to worship the golden image. God never compels the obedience of man. He leaves all free to choose whom they will serve.

**"Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort. Then**

**the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, in the province of Babylon.” Daniel 3:29, 30**

The tidings of the wonderful deliverance were carried to many countries by the representatives of the different nations that had been invited by Nebuchadnezzar to the dedication. Through the faithfulness of His children, God was glorified in all the earth.

This is more than just an interesting story, friends. We have come to the time when we may soon stand where the three Hebrew Children stood. You can read about it in Revelation 13. There we are told that the Powers of Earth will unite to try and force all to bow down to an image. This is a symbolic image though; it means they will seek to force a religious observance on all, but that observance will break God’s Law.

Those who refuse to ‘bow down’ to the decree to keep holy a day that God has never sanctioned; will certainly be thrown into a Fiery Furnace of affliction.

May we pray earnestly now, so that when that time comes and the rage of earthly kings combines to destroy God’s people, we will, in the strength of our Redeemer stand tall, as did the Three Hebrews on the Plain of Dura.

Jesus promises that we will not stand alone! We are not to fear. The same Mighty God who walked with those Hebrew youth in the Fiery Furnace, will be with us too. The ‘Form of the Fourth’ will be with us, and will soon put an end to man’s cruel and proud tyranny over his fellow man.

“Fear thou not; for I am with thee: be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness.” Isaiah 41:10.

**“And Jesus answered and said unto him, Get thee behind me, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.” Luke 4:8**

## The Mad King

Nebuchadnezzar was one of the greatest kings ever. As a prince he had begun rapidly conquering and bringing under subjection all nations round about him. After his father's death, he ruled wisely and greatly valued education and knowledge. As he conquered nations, he collected up some of their wisest men and then trained them to work in his court. As we know, Daniel the prophet of God, was among those he had brought to Babylon for this purpose.

The King had supervised the building of what was probably the most beautiful city ever built this side of the flood. Its hanging gardens were a wonder of the world and have never been duplicated. He made great walls around the city so thick that two chariots could drive side by side on top of them. The river, channeled to flow through the city, provided water and there was a system of storage for food that would make the city able to withstand the longest siege. Truly, Babylon was a great city and its king a great king.

But as happens with all monarchs as they become rich and powerful, he became proud and tyrannical. He began to oppress his subjects and bring cruel burdens and severe taxation upon them, so he could become even richer. He also began to take honor to himself that only was due to the God of Heaven.

**"Nebuchadnezzar the king, unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. I thought it good to shew the signs and wonders that the high God hath wrought toward me. How great are his signs! and how mighty are his wonders! his kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion is from generation to generation." Daniel 4:1-3**

In Daniel 4 we have an amazing account written, not by Daniel, but by King Nebuchadnezzar himself. It tells about a lesson that he had to learn the hard way. When he wrote this, he was the richest and most powerful man on

earth. He was wise also, and highly educated. He had a lot to be proud about, we would admit. But God changed him from being a proud monarch, boasting about himself, to a humble child of God.

Already God had taught a few important lessons to Nebuchadnezzar. In the dream of the image, he had been shown that God is the one who sets up and brings down kings and kingdoms. On the plains of Dura he had been shown that his power was limited.

**"I Nebuchadnezzar was at rest in mine house, and flourishing in my palace: I saw a dream which made me afraid, and the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head troubled me. Therefore made I a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon before me, that they might make known unto me the interpretation of the dream. Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof." Daniel 4:4-7**

But the lesson had not completely sunk in. So now we see Nebuchadnezzar awakening from yet another disturbing dream. He could remember this one, so again he sent for the wise men and magicians.

It is a fact that if God sends a prophetic dream to a person who is not a follower of God, they will have to find a true worshipper of God to correctly interpret it. The psychics and astrologers will not be able to do so. They do not understand spiritual truths. It was that way back then; and it is that way today.

Those who neither loved nor feared God, could not understand the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven. They could not approach unto the throne of Him who dwelleth in light unapproachable. To them the things of God must remain mysteries.

**"But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, saying, O Belteshazzar, master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in thee,**

**and no secret troubleth thee, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and the interpretation thereof.” Daniel 4:8, 9**

Once more in this idolatrous nation, testimony was to be borne to the fact that only those who love and fear God can understand the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven. The king in his perplexity sent for his servant Daniel, a man esteemed for his integrity and constancy, and unrivaled wisdom, and told him the dream that had made him feel afraid. Now this King was a mighty warrior, he did not panic easily, but when God chooses to frighten someone, even the bravest man trembles.

**“Thus were the visions of mine head in my bed; I saw, and behold a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof was great. The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth: The leaves thereof were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all: the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the fowls of the heaven dwelt in the boughs thereof, and all flesh was fed of it. I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven;” Daniel 4:10-13**

This heavenly being approached the tree, and in a loud voice cried for the tree to be cut down.

**“He cried aloud, and said thus, Hew down the tree, and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit: let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from his branches: Nevertheless leave the stump of his roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts in the grass of the earth:” Daniel 4:14-15**

**“Let his heart be changed from man’s, and let a beast’s heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him. This matter is by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent that the living may know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men. This dream I king Nebuchadnezzar have seen. Now thou, O Belteshazzar, declare the interpretation thereof,**

**forasmuch as all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation: but thou art able; for the spirit of the holy gods is in thee.” Daniel 4:16-18**

Notice in the account of the dream the Bible mentions ‘seven times’. In prophecy this expression is associated with God’s punishment for rebellion against Him. In Leviticus 26:18, where Moses lists the blessings and curses, we see this phrase: “And if ye will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.” The same phrase appears four times in this chapter in the curses that would come upon Israel if they refused to remain loyal to the God of Heaven and adopted the customs of the heathen. Prophetically it adds up to 2520 days or prophetic years. Here in the case of Nebuchadnezzar it is to be seven literal years. Daniel knew this phrase and sought to warn the king.

**“Then Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, was astonished for one hour, and his thoughts troubled him. The king spake, and said, Belteshazzar, let not the dream, or the interpretation thereof, trouble thee. Belteshazzar answered and said, My lord, the dream be to them that hate thee, and the interpretation thereof to thine enemies.” Daniel 4:19**

The King told the strange dream to Daniel and then asked him for the meaning. But Daniel didn’t answer right away. For an hour he was ‘astonied’. He didn’t know what to say. It was not an easy thing to tell to the king. Sometimes God’s people have to tell things that are not easy to say. But they are true and have to be said.

Finally Daniel said; “This dream be to your enemies!” Slowly Daniel explained the dream. ‘The great tree that you saw where the birds nested and the beasts found shelter is you and your government.’ The tree in the dream making shelter for birds and beasts, was what a government is supposed to be. Governments are meant to serve the interests and needs of the people; not the other way around.

**“The tree that thou sawest, which grew, and was strong, whose height reached unto the heaven, and the sight thereof to all the earth; Whose leaves were fair, and the fruit thereof**

**much, and in it was meat for all; under which the beasts of the field dwelt, and upon whose branches the fowls of the heaven had their habitation: It is thou, O king, that art grown and become strong: for thy greatness is grown, and reacheth unto heaven, and thy dominion to the end of the earth.” Daniel 4:20-22**

Nebuchadnezzar was at one time a superior ruler, a man more compassionate toward his subjects than was the ruler of any other heathen nation, and his rule was symbolized by a lofty tree. But the man who thinks it is his right to command his fellow men and says, “You shall,” and “You shall not,” is entirely out of his place, especially in the realm of religion. He takes upon himself that which was never given him and lords it over God’s purchased possession. Every man is accountable to God for his actions.

The man in a position of trust who is guided by the spirit of God will always protect the weak, relieve the needy, and look after the widow and the fatherless.

**“And whereas the king saw a watcher and an holy one coming down from heaven, and saying, Hew the tree down, and destroy it; yet leave the stump of the roots thereof in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him; And whereas they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots; thy kingdom shall be sure unto thee, after that thou shalt have known that the heavens do rule. Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto thee, and break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by shewing mercy to the poor; if it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity.” Daniel 4:23-27**

Daniel continued to tell about the Watcher, the Holy One who commanded the tree to be cut down and only leave the stump. But the stump was to be bound with brass and iron. Solemnly he told the king that he would be driven from men and eat grass like an ox and live with beasts out in the dew and rain for seven ‘times’.

**‘Seven Times’ = Seven Years of Literal Time**

When Daniel said this to the king, it seemed impossible it could ever happen. The king had powerful body-guards to protect him, who could ever drive him away?

Daniel knew that God is very gracious and forgiving so he advised the king to be humble, kind and gracious and consider the poor. He hoped by this, that the terrible judgment would not happen to the king.

Nebuchadnezzar did this for a while, but he gradually forgot the fear he had felt when he saw the Holy Watcher in the dream. A year later, he was walking in his palace and looking at the beauty and might of what he had built, and he started again to boast. For twelve months he was tested and proved of God, to see if he would humble his proud heart. At the end of the twelve months he walked in his palace in the kingdom of Babylon.

**“All this came upon the king Nebuchadnezzar. At the end of twelve months he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon. The king spake, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty? While the word was in the king’s mouth, there fell a voice from heaven, saying, O king Nebuchadnezzar, to thee it is spoken; The kingdom is departed from thee. And they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field: they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and seven times shall pass over thee, until thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. The same hour was the thing fulfilled upon Nebuchadnezzar: and he was driven from men, and did eat grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs were grown like eagles’ feathers, and his nails like birds’ claws.”**  
**Daniel 4:28-32**

Instantly the king went mad! He began to act like a wild animal. He didn’t know he was even human, much less a king. He didn’t know his own name; he tore his clothes and began to live like a beast.

They had no choice but to drive him out to the fields, where for seven years he ate plants and grass like a graz-



ing animal. He even stayed out in the rain. His hair grew shaggy and matted and his nails like bird's claws. What a change from the rich robed and well-groomed king to this thing, growling in the field.

**"And at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honoured him that liveth for ever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation: and all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and He doeth according to His will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay His hand, or say unto Him, What doest thou? At the same time my reason returned unto me; and for the glory of my kingdom, mine honor and brightness returned unto me; and my counselors and my lords sought unto me; and I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me. Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honor the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and His ways judgment: and those that walk in pride He is able to abase."**  
**Daniel 4:33-37**

Now just imagine this picture; seven years later, here is the king-beast out in the field munching grass, and all of a sudden his mind comes back to normal. He remembers everything that happened before and he looks at his body, his shaggy, matted hair and bird-claw hands. He is all dirty and scratched up from bushes. Now the truth comes home to him very clearly that God is the one who is in charge of kingdoms and kings.

At the end of the seven times, his reason was restored to him, and looking up in humility to the God of heaven, he recognized the divine hand in his chastisement. The transformation had come. The mighty monarch had become the humble child of God, obedient to His will. The despot had been changed into the wise, compassionate ruler.

Here is the greatest miracle about this whole happening. When Nebuchadnezzar comes in from the field, gets cleaned up and dressed again. He goes back to his throne

and nobody has any problem with that. They accept him back as king again and he reigns for the rest of his life and his son after him.

This is amazing, because in those days a king had many enemies and people would plot to overthrow him and take his throne. But God said in the dream that the stump would be bound with brass and iron and his kingdom would be returned to him once he knew who was God and who really rules in the affairs of men. And so it was, just as God had said it would be.

These words honouring God and showing he had learned his lesson, are the last recorded from Nebuchadnezzar, so we will meet him in heaven, if we too are faithful.

In Daniel's life, the desire to glorify God was the most powerful of all motives. He realized that when standing in the presence of men of influence, a failure to acknowledge God as the source of his wisdom would have made him an unfaithful steward. His constant recognition of the God of heaven before kings, princes, and statesmen, detracted not one iota from his influence. King Nebuchadnezzar, before whom Daniel so often honored the name of God, was finally thoroughly converted, and learned to "praise and extol and honour the King of heaven"

## ***DANIEL 5***

### **Belshazzar's Feast**

The wonderful lessons that God had taught to Nebuchadnezzar resulted in his spending the rest of his days worshipping the true God and being a good and merciful king to his people. He died about August-September 562 BC, and was succeeded by his son Evil-Merodach, who reigned only two years. Neriglissar, his son-in-law, four years; Laborosoarchod, Neriglissar's son, nine months, which being less than one year, is not counted in the canon of Ptolemy; and lastly, Nabonadius, who became king in

555 BC and shared the royal power with his son, Belshazzar. Nabonadius was away, perhaps at war, and the haughty young king Belshazzar was left to manage the great city of Babylon.

But although Belshazzar knew all about the happenings in the life of Nebuchadnezzar, his grandfather, it made no impression on his pride. Defiantly he returned to the worship of idols and all the pagan festivals. Under his foolish rule, mighty Babylon, built at so great an effort by his fathers, was soon to fall.

**“Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.” Daniel 5:1**

It may be that Belshazzar, growing up when the kingdom was already conquered and surrounded by luxury, did not have to learn to work hard or to control himself. Maybe he was a spoilt child. Whatever the reason, he ended up being known as one of the most foolish kings in history.

In this story we again see the ‘Watcher and the Holy One’ that Nebuchadnezzar trembled before in his dream. But for him there had been a second chance; Belshazzar would have no second chance. Why? Because he knew better!

God expects us to learn lessons from the Bible, history, and even what our parents and grandparents have learned in their experiences. When Nebuchadnezzar was king he did not know any better than to be just like all the heathen kings, and God gave him lesson after lesson until he got the point.

Belshazzar knew Nebuchadnezzar and he no doubt even told Belshazzar as a child, his stories about the True God and what He had taught him. He knew about the Watcher and Holy One. But he refused to obey God and just wanted to live for parties and fun. It is important to learn the lessons God makes available to us in our childhood and youth. There is not always a second chance!

Isaiah 45:1 “Thus saith the Lord to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut.”

Here is an amazing fact of the Bible that shows us that

God is real. The prophet Isaiah wrote this prediction over a hundred years before Cyrus was born and told just how the city of Babylon would be captured.

There are some interesting things about the great city. It had been made in such a way that it could not be captured; at least it looked that way to man. The great walls were so thick that two chariots could race side by side on the top. They could never be knocked down with the siege engines of those days.

They had huge storehouses full of carefully preserved food, enough for twenty years. The Euphrates River flowed through the city to provide water and had special gates so that no one could sneak in through the river. These are the 'two leaved gates' that the Lord describes in the prophecy.

Now Cyrus and his general were very clever. They pretended to lay siege to the city, and they had soldiers camp where they could be seen from the walls of Babylon. These soldiers lounged around and didn't seem very serious about anything. This made the young and foolish king, Belshazzar very bold.

History tells us they even threw food out over the walls to show the soldiers they were not at all worried. Oh how silly man can be! Babylon was like the 'unsinkable' Titanic, that is out there off Newfoundland, on the bottom of the ocean.

"He, that being often reprov'd hardeneth his neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy." Proverbs 29:1

**"Belshazzar, whiles he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein. Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them. They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone." Daniel 5:2-4**

Here we continue to see this foolish young king, heading for destruction. An army is camped outside the walls, determined to conquer the city, and the king is so cocky that he decides to throw a huge party. He invites a thousand important people and all the pretty ladies. He is so sure he is safe that he just wants to 'celebrate'.

Wine flows like water, rich food is heaped on the tables. Nothing is lacking in the music and entertainment; nothing except truth and godliness that is. Then if all this were not enough wickedness, Belshazzar, drunk with wine, decides to show off even more.

He decides to prove once and for all that his grandfather's 'True God' is nothing. Maybe some of the older nobles had reminded him that Nebuchadnezzar's dream showed that Babylon *would* fall, we don't know, but here's what he did: With reason dethroned through shameless intoxication, and with lower impulses and passions now in the ascendancy, the king himself took the lead in the riotous orgy. As the feast progressed, he "commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein. The king would prove that nothing was too sacred for his hands to handle.

The sacred vessels from the temple of God are brought and alcohol poured into them and they drank out of them, laughing and joking about the 'True God' of the Jews. In the next verse, we are given the thought, that he may even have brought out the sacred golden candlestick from the temple, and displayed it in the banquet hall.

**"In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king's palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another. The king cried aloud to bring in the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. And the king spake, and said to the wise**

**men of Babylon, Whosoever shall read this writing, and show me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom. Then came in all the king's wise men: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof. Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonished." Daniel 5:5-9**

Little did Belshazzar think that there was a Heavenly Witness to his idolatrous revelry; that a divine Watcher, unrecognized, looked upon the scene of profanation, heard the sacrilegious mirth, beheld the idolatry. But soon the uninvited Guest made His presence felt. When the revelry was at its height a bloodless hand came forth and traced upon the walls of the palace characters that gleamed like fire – words which, though unknown to the vast throng, were a portent of doom to the now conscience-stricken king and his guests.

Hushed was the boisterous mirth, while men and women, seized with nameless terror, watched the hand slowly tracing the mysterious characters. Before them passed, as in panoramic view, the deeds of their evil lives; they seemed to be arraigned before the judgment bar of the eternal God, whose power they had just defied. Where but a few moments before had been hilarity and blasphemous witticism, were pallid faces and cries of fear. When God makes men fear, they cannot hide the intensity of their terror.

Belshazzar was the most terrified of them all. He it was who above all others had been responsible for the rebellion against God, which that night had reached its height in the Babylonian realm. In the presence of the unseen Watcher, the representative of Him whose power had been challenged, and whose name had been blasphemed, the king was paralyzed with fear.

In vain the king tried to read the burning letters. But here was a secret he could not fathom, a power he could neither understand nor gainsay. In despair he turned to the wise men of his realm for help. His wild cry rang out in the

assembly, calling upon the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers to read the writing. Quickly the word goes through the palace until someone tells the Queen mother. She comes and tells the terrified king, who doesn't look so smart now, that he'd better send for Daniel who could read the writing for him.

**"Now the queen, by reason of the words of the king and his lords, came into the banquet house: and the queen spake and said, O king, live for ever: let not thy thoughts trouble thee, nor let thy countenance be changed: There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, was found in him; whom the king Nebuchadnezzar thy father, the king, I say, thy father, made master of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, and soothsayers; Forasmuch as an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, interpreting of dreams, and shewing of hard sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in the same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar: now let Daniel be called, and he will shew the interpretation."** Daniel 5:10-12

Now there is an interesting fact about these words written on the wall. The king could read them because they were in his language but he could not at all understand why they were there and what they meant. What actually were these words? They were numbers:

The four words stood for MENE=50 SHEKELS; MENE=50 SHEKELS; TEKEL= 1 SHEKEL; UPHAR-SIN=25 SHEKELS. The Total Equaled 126 SHEKELS.

The SHEKEL is 20 GERAHS: Exodus 30:13; Leviticus 27:25; Numbers 3:47; Numbers 18:16; Ezekiel 45:12;

20 Times 126 = 2520 GERAHS, or SEVEN TIMES; the number associated with God's punishment for rebellion against Him.

That night Belshazzar's kingdom was finished. He had transgressed passed the point of return. His kingdom would be rent from him.

**"Then was Daniel brought in before the king. And the king spake and said unto Daniel, Art thou that Daniel, which**

**art of the children of the captivity of Judah, whom the king my father brought out of Jewry? I have even heard of thee, that the spirit of the gods is in thee, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom is found in thee. And now the wise men, the astrologers, have been brought in before me, that they should read this writing, and make known unto me the interpretation thereof: but they could not shew the interpretation of the thing:" Daniel 5:13-15**

Now Daniel had not been Belshazzar's right hand man as he had been for Nebuchadnezzar. The foolish young king so determined to do things his own way, had no desire to have godly people around him. But now he sends word for Daniel to come right away. When people seem to be so bold and sure of themselves, it doesn't take much to change all that.

**"And I have heard of thee, that thou canst make interpretations, and dissolve doubts: now if thou canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, thou shalt be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about thy neck, and shalt be the third ruler in the kingdom. Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation." Daniel 5:16, 17**

Daniel wasn't impressed by the promises of rich rewards. He told the wicked king to keep them for himself; but he would read the writing and tell him what it meant. Thus Daniel, representing the living God, was brought before this foolish ruler to declare his doom.

It is interesting that for many years no one knew why Belshazzar only said he would make Daniel 'third ruler' in the kingdom. Then when they found clay tablets and seals with the names of Nabonadius and Belshazzar on them, they learned that Belshazzar was second ruler, as his father was still also king.

Before Daniel reads the writing he tells Belshazzar just what he should have remembered and never forgotten. He tells him all about the things that happened to his grandfa-



ther. He tells him that he should have known better than to do what he had done.

**“O thou king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour: And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: and he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that He appointeth over it whomsoever He will. And thou his son, O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this; but hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of His house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified: then was the part of the hand sent from Him; and this writing was written.” Daniel 5:16-24**

### **Daniel Rebukes Belshazzar**

Daniel first disclaimed the idea of being influenced by such motives as governed the soothsayers and astrologers. He said, “Let thy rewards be to another.” He wished it distinctly understood that he did not enter upon the work of interpreting this matter on account of the offer of gifts and rewards. He then reminded Belshazzar of the experience of the king's grandfather, Nebuchadnezzar. He told Belshazzar that though he knew all this, yet he had not humbled his heart, but had lifted up himself against the God of heaven. He had even gone so far as to profane God's sacred vessels, praising the senseless gods of men's invention, and refus-

ing to glorify God in whose hand his breath was. For this reason, Daniel told him, the hand had been sent forth from God whom he had daringly and insultingly challenged, to trace those characters of fearful, though hidden import. He then proceeded to explain the writing.

**“And this is the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN. This is the interpretation of the thing: Mene: God has numbered thy kingdom, and finished it. Tekel: Thou art weighed in the balances and found wanting. Peres: Thy kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians. Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.” Daniel 5:25-29**

Under the circumstances, it seemed kind of useless to make Daniel third ruler in a kingdom whose doom he had just announced. But I think God had a reason for this. Because Daniel was then made a ruler, the new king would get to meet him, where if this had not happened, he may not. God takes care of His children who are faithful to Him.

For every person on earth there comes a time when they are ‘weighed in the balances.’ May we not be found ‘wanting’ (not right with God) but ‘right with God’.

In Daniel 7:4; in the first year of Belshazzar’s reign; Babylon was shown to Daniel as a mighty winged Lion, meaning speed, nobility and power. But the prophecy said its wings would be plucked, and it would be made to stand on its feet like a man, and a man’s heart, a cowardly heart, would be given to it. And so it came to pass.

**“In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.” Daniel 5:30, 31**

While the enemy soldiers were camping outside of Babylon where they could be seen from the city, most of them were working on a big project where they could not be seen from the city. They were digging a channel to turn the great river out of its bed. They finished this while Belshazzar had his big party. Then the army marched towards the

city in the riverbed.

The way Babylon was constructed, there was no way to get in through the riverbed. An army would simply march through and out the other side and still not enter into the city itself, unless, the special 'two leaved gates' were left open. This is just what God had predicted and just what happened. Maybe it was because a lot of the wine that was meant for the king's party, ended up being drunk by the guards and watchmen, we don't know, but the gates were left unlocked and the enemy soldiers swarmed into the city from the now shallow riverbed.

Just a short time after Daniel pronounced the sentence of God on the wicked and foolish king; the soldiers entered the banquet hall and killed Belshazzar.

You may plan for merely selfish good, you may gather together treasure, you may build mansions great and high, as did the builders of ancient Babylon; but you cannot build wall so high or gate so strong as to shut out the messengers of doom.

Belshazzar the king "feasted in his palace," and "praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone." But the hand of One invisible wrote upon his walls the words of doom, and the tread of hostile armies was heard at his palace gates.

"In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain," and an alien monarch sat upon the throne. To live for self is to perish. Covetousness, the desire of benefit for self's sake, cuts the soul off from life. It is the spirit of Satan to get, to draw to self. It is the spirit of Christ to give, to sacrifice self for the good of others.

God made Nebuchadnezzar to become a beast for a while, but Belshazzar ignored the lesson and made a beast out of himself.

'Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall.' Proverbs 16:18.

**DANIEL 6****Daniel in the Lion's Den**

It had been a long time since the boy Daniel was brought to Babylon as a slave by Prince Nebuchadnezzar. He had served long and faithfully and was now well up in years. Having been made a chief ruler in the kingdom just before Belshazzar's death had brought him to the attention of the conquering ruler Darius, placed over the city by Cyrus.

Darius took a liking to Daniel, and felt he could trust him. He too was an older man, being 62 when Babylon fell, and he valued the experience and godly wisdom of the faithful Hebrew captive. Quickly Daniel found himself once again as first ruler next to the King.

**"It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom an hundred and twenty princes, which should be over the whole kingdom; And over these three presidents; of whom Daniel was first: that the princes might give accounts unto them, and the king should have no damage. Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and princes, because an excellent spirit was in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm." Daniel 6:1-3**

He set up 120 princes and over them were to be three presidents. Daniel was the chief of the three, so Daniel was the one they all had to answer to.

**"Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him." Daniel 6:4**

So again we see a situation where heathen rulers were forced to have a worshipper of the True God as head over them. Satan didn't like it. The heathen rulers didn't like it. But they were stuck with it. Darius was very pleased with his new friend, Daniel.

Then they got a nasty idea. They decided to watch Daniel very closely and surely they would be able to catch him making a mistake or being dishonest. They watched him in everything he did. They wanted to catch him in

something that they could use to get him fired, or better yet, executed. But they couldn't get anything to report that was bad about Daniel.

**"Then said these men, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel, except we find it against him concerning the law of his God." Daniel 6:5**

Daniel's position was not an enviable one. He stood at the head of a dishonest, prevaricating, godless cabinet, whose members watched him with keen, jealous eyes, to find some flaw in his conduct. They kept spies on his track, to see if they could not find something against him. Satan suggested to these men a plan whereby they might get rid of Daniel: use his religion as a means of condemning him. They realized that the only way they could trap him would have to be "concerning the law of his God".

Now you would think that they would have been ashamed to try to harm this dear old man who did his work so well and faithfully, but they were jealous and determined to get rid of him.

The keen eyes of jealousy were fixed upon Daniel day after day, their watchings sharpened by hatred, yet not a word or act of his life could they make appear wrong. The more blameless the conduct of Daniel, the greater was the hatred excited against him by his enemies. They were filled with madness, because they could find nothing in his moral character or in the discharge of his duties upon which to base a complaint against him.

**"Then these presidents and princes assembled together to the king, and said thus unto him, King Darius, live for ever. All the presidents of the kingdom, the governors, and the princes, the counsellors, and the captains, have consulted together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm decree, that whosoever shall ask a petition of any God or man for thirty days, save of thee, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions." Daniel 6:6. 7.**

So they got their heads together and they started to flatter king Darius. They told him what a great king he was and what he could do to make himself even greater. "Why

don't you make a law that says for thirty days nobody can ask anything from any man or even any god except you; and if they do, they will be thrown into the lion's den."

Now they could have said no one should ask anything of the God of the Hebrews, but that would have shown the king what their plan really was.

**"Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. Wherefore king Darius signed the writing and the decree." Daniel 6:8, 9**

That was really silly, don't you think? But they had flattered him so much, and made him feel so proud of himself that he just fell for it. Quickly they put the 'law' before him and he signed it and sealed it. He never dreamed it was just a plot to get rid of his best friend.

**"Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime." Daniel 6:10**

Daniel was a man of prayer. Three times a day he knelt before the Lord; and Satan told his enemies that they could use this to destroy him. Daniel knew about the decree, he knew it was designed for one reason only, to get rid of him.

Now Daniel could have just prayed secretly for a month. He could have prayed in his head, or in the bathroom or something. But he would not dishonour his God like that. He knew also that no man has any right to tell another man how he is to worship his God. To even pretend to go along with it would deny and insult God.

So he opened his windows just like always towards Jerusalem and he prayed. Not once, not twice but three times a day, just like always. And hiding where they could watch the whole thing were those wicked, jealous rulers. Daniel knew it; but he committed himself to the Lord and went about his business anyway. He was no different in this time of danger than when all was well with him. Just like his three friends had years before, he trusted God and left

the problem in His hands.

That law seemed silly, but it was meant to destroy God's faithful one. The Sunday Law, that will be forced upon the nations in the last days, will seem silly also; but it is Satan's plan to get rid of God's true children who keep the true Sabbath of the Ten Commandments.

**"Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his God. Then they came near, and spake before the king concerning the king's decree; Hast thou not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask a petition of any God or man within thirty days, save of thee, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions? The king answered and said, The thing is true, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. Then answered they and said before the king, That Daniel, which is of the children of the captivity of Judah, regardeth not thee, O king, nor the decree that thou hast signed, but maketh his petition three times a day." Daniel 6:11-13**

As soon as they said it, the king saw his mistake. King Darius realized that all along it had been just a plot to get rid of Daniel. He knew they were jealous of Daniel, and now they had their weapon to use against him and he, foolishly, had given it to them.

**"Then the king, when he heard these words, was sore displeased with himself, and set his heart on Daniel to deliver him: and he laboured till the going down of the sun to deliver him." Daniel 6:14**

Now there was a very interesting law that the Medo-Persian Empire had made for themselves; they had passed a law, that no law that they made could be changed. In other words they felt they could never make any mistakes. They thought they were infallible, like God Himself! So the king couldn't just pass another law and not put Daniel in with the lions. Those rulers would have made big trouble for him if he did that.

There is another power today that claims to be infallible. Do you know who it is? Yes, it is the Pope of Rome. He thinks he is 'like God' also. But was Darius really infal-

libile? Hadn't he just made a terrible mistake? Yes indeed! And so will the popes of Rome find out someday that they have made a terrible mistake by persecuting God's faithful people.

**"Then these men assembled unto the king, and said unto the king, Know, O king, that the law of the Medes and Persians is, That no decree nor statute which the king establisheth may be changed. Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast him into the den of lions. Now the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee." Daniel 6:15, 16**

King Darius gave the order and went with Daniel to the lions' den. In those days kings liked to have caged lions, and throwing people to them was a good way to get rid of people they didn't like, and help to feed the hungry lions. But the king had learned something about Daniel and his God, and assured him that his God would protect him.

**"And a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den; and the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel." Daniel 6:17**

Daniel was thrown into the den and a stone was brought and placed on the mouth of the den and the king sealed it with his own seal. It seems King Darius was not as worried about the lions, as he was about the wicked rulers coming and stealing Daniel out of the den, and perhaps killing him or taking him away, and everybody would think he was eaten up. So he made sure the den could not be opened without breaking that seal.

**"Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting: neither were instruments of musick brought before him: and his sleep went from him. Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions." Daniel 6:18, 19**

Then he went back to his palace and spent a sad, miserable night. He felt very ashamed of himself that he had allowed the rulers to trick him like they did. He kept thinking about his dear old friend out there in the den of nasty



lions. He would not eat or listen to music and just counted the hours till morning.

**“And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions?” Daniel 6:20**

The first rays of dawn saw the worried king hurrying out to the lions' den. He called out to his old friend and was overjoyed to hear the polite reply of the faithful servant of God.

**“Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever. My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.” Daniel 6:21, 22**

Quickly the king orders the stone removed and Daniel taken up out of the den. He was examined carefully and there was no hurt on him. Not even a scratch or a bite. There stood Daniel, preserved by a power higher than any power of earth. His cause was vindicated, his innocence declared. “No manner of hurt was found upon him, because he believed in his God.” Faith did it. A miracle had been wrought.

Why then, were Daniel's accusers brought and cast in? They probably claimed that the preservation of Daniel, was not a miracle, but the fact that the lions chanced at that time not to be hungry. The king may have said, “In that case they will no more attack you than him, so we will test the matter by putting you in.”

**“Then was the king exceeding glad for him, and commanded that they should take Daniel up out of the den. So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no manner of hurt was found upon him, because he believed in his God. And the king commanded, and they brought those men which had accused Daniel, and they cast them into the den of lions, them, their children, and their wives; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den.” Daniel 6:23, 24**

Now Darius ordered the wicked rulers who had tricked him to be brought with their whole families and thrown into the lions' den. The lions were hungry enough when not restrained by divine intervention, and these men were torn to pieces before they reached the bottom of the den. Thus was Daniel doubly vindicated, and the words of Solomon were strikingly fulfilled: "The righteous is delivered out of trouble, and the wicked cometh in his stead." Proverbs 11:8. Those big cats just crunched them up like crackers, so their evil plan came back onto their own selves.

The king then sent around a decree telling the story of the great God of heaven:

**"Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for he is the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion shall be even unto the end. He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions." Daniel 6:25-27**

Because of this, the message of the true God went around the world again and it resulted in many people in far away lands, turning to the worship of the true God of heaven, the Creator of heaven and earth.

"Those who have moral courage to stand in opposition to the vices and errors of their fellow men will receive hatred, insult, and abusive falsehood. They may be thrust down from their high position, because they would not be bought or sold, because they could not be induced by bribes or threats to stain their hands with iniquity. Everything on earth may seem to conspire against them; but God has set His seal upon His own work. They may be regarded by their fellow men as weak, unmanly, unfit to hold office; but how differently does the Most High regard them. Those who despise them are the really ignorant. While the storms of calumny and reviling may pursue the man of integrity through life, and beat upon his grave, God has the "well

done” prepared for him. Folly and iniquity will at best yield only a life of unrest and discontent, and at its close a thorny dying pillow.” ST, February 2, 1882

**“So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.” Daniel 6:28.**

## **DANIEL 7**

# **Awesome Beasts of Prophecy**

**“In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, and told the sum of the matters.” Daniel 7:1**

In the books of Daniel and Revelation, the same history is told over and over again, with each different view adding information to the total picture. When all these pieces are put together by a careful student of prophecy, under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, we see a detailed picture of history and the future, especially earth’s final events.

This kind of knowledge is not available to the casual Bible reader, or to the critics and skeptics, no matter how educated or clever they think themselves to be. Remember how the so-called ‘wise-men’ and magicians of Daniel’s day could not interpret the messages from God? It is the same today.

A child, who loves God and honestly wants to obey Him and learn the Truth, will understand what the great men of the world cannot know. It’s part of the Mystery of the Holy Bible.

**“Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea. And four great beasts came up from the sea, diverse one from another.” Daniel 7:2-3**

Belshazzar had come to the throne of Babylon, and as we saw before, he didn’t want godly people like Daniel around his court. What Daniel’s job was at this time we are not told. One night God gave him a dream and in the

dream he saw a raging sea, tossed by the four winds, and out of that sea came four strange beasts, one at a time following each other.

We are learning how to understand the great prophecies of the Bible. This is a wonderful study and you will really enjoy it. The books of Daniel and Revelation are really part of the same prophecy and they both help us to understand what the prophecies mean.

There is an important rule in prophecy that you must learn if you don't want to get mixed up. We must always find the meanings of the prophecies in the Bible itself. If we just read something and then I say, "I think it means this", and you say, "I think it means that", we will be confused. This is what most people do when they read prophecy and it gets to be a mess. The Bible must always be its own interpreter.

In prophecy the waters or 'great sea' means people and nations on earth: Revelation 17:15 ". . . The waters which thou sawest . . . are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues."

The 'four winds' mean war, trouble and strife: Revelation 7:1 "And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree."

Beasts represent kingdoms or nations: Daniel 7:23 "Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth."

When we see the beasts come up out of the water when the winds blow, we know they came to power by war and battle.

To Daniel was given a vision of fierce beasts, representing the powers of the earth. But the symbol of the Messiah's kingdom is a lamb. While earthly kingdoms rule by physical force, Christ is to banish every man-made weapon, every instrument of coercion (force). His kingdom was to be established to uplift and ennoble fallen humanity.

Forcing people to worship or obey God, even in something that in itself is right, is not what God wants. He

only wants people to serve Him because they want to, and choose to.

**“The first was like a lion, and had eagle’s wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man’s heart was given to it.” Daniel 7:4**

The winged lion showed power and speed. It represented Babylon and was even used as a symbol by Nebuchadnezzar. Archeologists have seen stones from Babylon with lions, and even winged lions on them.

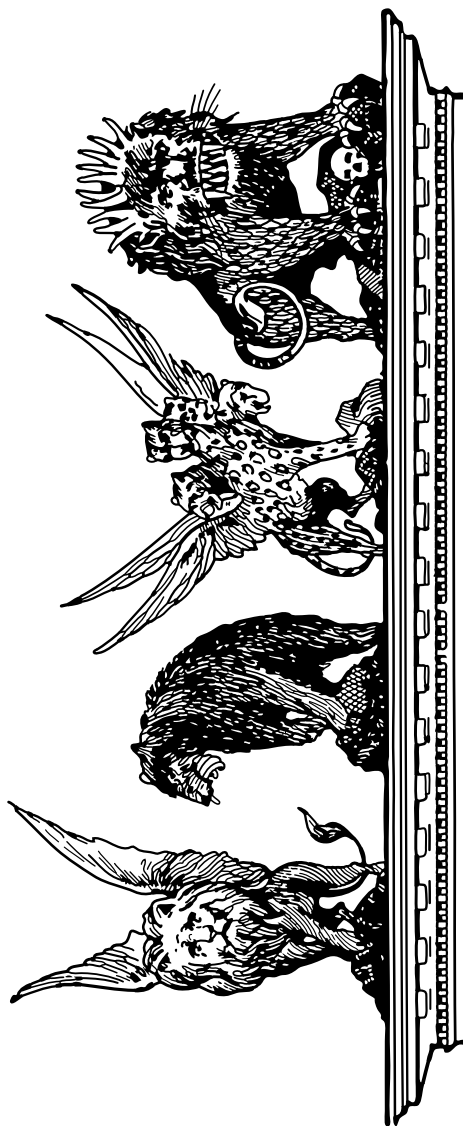
Under Nebuchadnezzar the kingdom was swift and powerful, but later it became weak and foolish under Belshazzar. This is what the wings being plucked and the lion standing up with only a timid man’s heart showed. Luxury, indulgence, and soft living changed the mighty lion into a weak sissy.

Babylon is a symbol of the world at large. When its doom was made certain, its kings and officers seemed to be as men insane, and their own course hastened its destiny. When the doom of a nation is fixed, it seems that all the energy, wisdom, and discretion of its former time of prosperity, deserts its men of position, and they hasten the evil they would avert. Outside enemies are not the greatest peril to an individual or a nation. The overthrow of a nation results, under the providence of God, from some unwise or evil course of its own. But the people who fear God, who are loyal to his laws, who carry out the principles of righteousness in their lives, have a sure defense; God will be the refuge of those who trust in him.

**“And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and it raised up itself on one side, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.” Daniel 7:5**

The bear was higher on one side than the other. This was Medo-Persia, a combination of two powers, with Persia being the stronger. This was shown by it being ‘raised up on one side’.

The character of this power is well represented by a



## THE FOUR BEASTS

“We have also a more sure word of prophecy;  
whereunto ye do well that ye take heed:” 2 Peter 1:19

bear. The Medes and Persians were cruel and greedy, robbers and spoilers of the people.

It had three ribs in its mouth, indicating the three areas that Medo-Persia conquered to come to rule the world; Babylon, Lydia and Egypt, which were especially ground down and oppressed by this power. It was a cruel and vicious nation and killed many people. That's why the verse says "Arise and devour much flesh".

The Medo-Persian kingdom was visited by the wrath of God because in it His Law was trampled underfoot. The fear of God possessed no power among the people. Wickedness, blasphemy, and corruption were the prevailing influences in this kingdom; and the kingdoms that followed were even more base and corrupt. They deteriorated because they cast off God. Forgetting him, they sank lower and lower in the scale of moral worth, while they raised themselves higher and higher in pride and arrogance.

**"After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it." Daniel 7:6**

Wings in Prophecy = Speed

This was the kingdom of Greece under Alexander the Great. It conquered the world so fast that the leopard beast is shown with four wings. A leopard is a fast animal without wings, but with four wings God showed its rise to power would be very fast.

The four heads represented the four generals of Alexander the Great, which took over the kingdom following Alexander's death, just after he had conquered the entire world.

These were: Cassander, who had Greece and its area; Lysimachus, who had Asia-minor; Ptolemy, who had Egypt; and Seleucus, who had Syria and Babylon.

It is important to know how Alexander died, as there is a lesson there for all. He could conquer nations but he could not control his appetite, passions and pride.

He worshipped the gods Hercules and Bacchus (god of wine) and tried to imitate what they were said to have

done. He claimed to be a god himself and when one of his generals died, he told people to worship him as a god. He delighted in drinking and parties and when drunk could fly into a rage and kill even his friends. He did many cruel and bloodthirsty acts, once burning an entire city on the whim of a wicked woman.

He encouraged such excessive drinking among his followers that on one occasion twenty of them together died as the result of the party. At length, having sat through one long drinking spree, he was immediately invited to another, when after drinking to each of the twenty guests present, he twice drank full, says history, incredible as it may seem, the Herculean cup containing six of our quarts. He thereupon fell down, seized with a violent fever, of which he died eleven days later, in May or June, BC 323. He was only thirty two years old.

Compare Alexander the Great with the prophet Daniel who decided not to eat the king's rich food or drink his wine.

**"After this I saw in the night visions, and behold a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it; and it had ten horns."**  
**Daniel 7:7**

Now came up out of the angry sea, a beast so terrible that no real animal could represent it. Different from the other beasts, it was very strong and devoured and broke nations to pieces. The iron teeth remind us of the iron of the legs and feet of the great image of chapter 2. You see there are four series of prophecies in Daniel. Each one tells the same story, but each one gives additional detail to the story and in Revelation the story continues.

In Daniel 2, the image showed four world kingdoms. Babylon; head of gold; winged lion. Medo-Pesia; arms of silver; bear. Greece: Thighs of brass; winged leopard. And the Iron Legs; Rome; the terrible beast.

These great iron teeth speak of cruelty and strength. As the animal tore to pieces and devoured its prey with these



grotesque fangs, so Rome devoured nations and peoples in its conquests. It “stamped the residue”. Where Rome did not destroy or subjugate a people, it often employed them as slaves, or sold them into slavery. In its intense power to destroy, Rome surpassed the kingdoms that had previously ruled the world.

Rome was different (Diverse) because it was a Republic and the other ‘Beasts’ had kings. Rome had elected ‘dictators’ which were supposed to obey certain laws and answer to the people of the nation; like USA presidents are supposed to do.

But later the Caesars didn’t do this, and became very much like what the Pope would later be; not kings but rather gods. They combined Church and State and God has forbidden this. Many Christians were martyred as they refused to worship the Caesars. God tells us so much in just a few prophetic words.

**“I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things.” Daniel 7:8**

Now this terrible Roman beast had ten horns on his head and Daniel looked closely at these horns. All of a sudden he saw another little horn come up, and as it did, it plucked up three horns. Horns in Bible prophecy are kings, powers, or kingdoms. (See verse 24)

“Another little horn” better, “another horn, a little one.” Though small at the beginning, this little horn is described later as “more stout than his fellows,” literally, “greater than its companions.” It will be seen that this was the continuation of the Roman power through the Roman Church.

Rome has two parts; first there was Pagan Rome and then the Papacy grew up and ruled in the same city. The strange ‘little horn’ with eyes and a mouth points us to Papal Rome. This little horn plucked up three other horns and then it ruled the earth.

Daniel was worried about this ‘little horn’ because

it persecuted God's people for 1260 years. As Daniel is watching this strange 'Little Horn', he is shown a complete change of view: suddenly the vision shifted to a judgment scene.

**"I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire." Daniel 7:9**

Now we see a wonderful judgment scene. It seems that God wants very much to tell us, that even though this terrible beast power was going to make things hard for God's people, God knew all about it and He would judge fairly.

Here Daniel saw God coming in and sitting on a judgment throne. The words 'thrones were cast down', means that seating places were placed in the room. In the east they often sat on big cushions; you would 'throw down' a big cushion for someone to sit on.

**"A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened. I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake: I beheld even till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame." Daniel 7:10, 11**

The Bible shows us God in His high and holy place, not in a state of inactivity, not in silence and solitude, but surrounded by ten thousand times ten thousand and thousands of thousands of holy intelligences, all waiting to do His will. Through channels which we cannot discern He is in active communication with every part of His dominion. But it is in this speck of a world, in the souls that He gave His only-begotten Son to save, that His interest and the interest of all heaven is centered. God is bending from His throne to hear the cry of the oppressed.

Jesus let Daniel know that the beast would not always get away with his cruel work against God's people. He would be judged and executed. Over and over in the Bible Jesus tells His people that He is in charge and will win at

last.

**"As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time." Daniel 7:12**

In this verse it says although their kingdoms ended their 'lives were prolonged'. This is interesting, as when we study the fourth Beast, and especially the little horn kingdom, and some of the beasts in Revelation, we can see characteristics from all the other kingdoms in this Roman Papal kingdom.

Babylon had what was called the 'mysteries' or 'mystery religion'. The concepts of this secret religion of the priests, came down through the ages, from the time of Nimrod and his wicked wife, Semeramis. When the Jews were in captivity in Babylon some of them learned this 'mystery religion', brought it into their own religion and called it the 'Kabala'. It involved rituals, mystic symbols, magic numbers and special words and was really just a bunch of Satan's lies.

Many organizations today use this same 'secret' symbolism. Masonry, witchcraft, some Jewish societies, Eastern religions, Wicca, Satanists, and much of it is found in Catholicism. The methods of the priests, the mass, the confessional, worship of saints, and a lot of other things, trace back to the worship of Nimrod, his wife Semeramis, and her illegitimate son Tammuz. That's where the cross symbol came from also; it was the sign of Tammuz, the sun god. Jesus died on the symbol of the counterfeit religion; sun worship.

Medo-Persia claimed that when it made a law, no one could change it. That meant they believed they could make no mistakes; they were infallible. They were also very cruel and a persecuting power. The Papacy also claims to be infallible, is a persecuting power and has shown itself to be very cruel. (Think of the Inquisition.)

When a man claims he is infallible, he is really claiming to be God. Remember how the king of Medo-Persia tried to force people to pray only to him? You can't talk to the Pope, even today, without first bowing to him and kissing his ring.

Greece developed forms of philosophy and religion that still plague us today very much. Our whole worldly system of education is based on Greek philosophy, which makes it hard for people to understand the real truths of the Bible. Remember, Paul said the Greeks thought the truth about Jesus was 'foolishness'. (1 Corinthians 1:23) They exalted men's ideas and traditions above God's Word.

Of course much of the religion and ways of Pagan Roman Sun Worship came right into the papacy; so much so that Daniel 7 doesn't even use a new beast to show Papal Rome, but just a horn on the same terrible beast.

We have wickedness from all these kingdoms with us today. We need to study God's word and not be deceived.

**"I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed."**  
**Daniel 7:13, 14**

The coming of Christ here described is not his second coming to the earth. He comes to the Ancient of days in Heaven to receive dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, which will be given him at the close of his work as a mediator. It is this coming, and not his second advent to the earth, that was foretold in prophecy to take place at the termination of the 2300 days, in 1844. Attended by heavenly angels, our great High Priest enters the holy of holies, and there appears in the presence of God, to engage in the last acts of his ministration in behalf of man, to perform the work of investigative judgment, and to make an atonement for all who are shown to be entitled to its benefits.

**"I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of my body, and the visions of my head troubled me. I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things. Daniel 7:15-16**

Daniel was really worried when he saw the things this 'Little Horn' would do against God's true people, so he asked one of the heavenly beings he saw standing nearby during the vision to explain it to him.

**"These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth. But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever." Daniel 7:17-18**

We see here a similar scene as with the stone in Daniel 2; it is the 'saints' that take the kingdom, empowered by Jesus and the Holy Spirit. (See verse 27)

**"Then I would know the truth of the fourth beast, which was diverse from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth were of iron, and his nails of brass; which devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet; And of the ten horns that were in his head, and of the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even of that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows." Daniel 7:19-20**

It is interesting that the Roman government had ten parts and then later as Rome began to fall, it split up into ten nations. It was after this dividing up, that the strange little horn came up. Then Daniel saw something weird, the little horn had eyes and a mouth speaking great things.

It "had eyes," showing that it claimed to be the household of faith; "eyes" meaning faith, spiritual insight.

"Mouth speaking great things," showing that the church would claim infallibility, and other rights that belong only to God. Having "a mouth that speaks" also means that it passes laws and legislates. It was the 'Little Horn with the Big Mouth!'

"Whose look would be more stout than his fellows," showing that he would claim authority over all, even the kings of other nations, the other horns.

Before the strange 'Little Horn' could totally rule the world, there were three nations that had to be destroyed. Three of the nations of the former Pagan Roman Empire, had what is known as Arian religious beliefs, incompatible

with the dogmas of the emerging Papacy.

Now there is historical evidence that at least some of the people in these three nations were true primitive Christians who kept the seventh-day Sabbath. But Rome called them 'Arians' whether it was true or not. They had to be gotten rid of before that power could totally dominate the consciences of the people. They were the Heruli, the Vandals, and the Ostrogoths. By 538 AD the last of them were 'uprooted'.

The Holy Spirit represents worldly kingdoms under the symbol of fierce beasts of prey; but Christ is "the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world." John 1:29. In His plan of government there is no employment of brute force to compel the conscience.

The "Mystery of Godliness" is the Creator God coming all the way down to die as a man to rescue fallen man.

The "Mystery of Iniquity" is a created being trying to take the place of the Creator God.

**"I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them; Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom." Daniel 7:21, 22**

Then thrones were seen, and Jesus and the redeemed saints sat upon them; and the saints reigned as kings and priests unto God. Christ, in union with His people, judged the wicked dead, comparing their acts with the statute book, the Word of God, and deciding every case according to the deeds done in the body.

**"Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces. And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings." Daniel 7:23, 24**

Again we see that word, "diverse." Rome was diverse, now this little horn power is again diverse. There are many ways this is so; it is a religious power, ruling by coercing the

political powers to do her bidding. Another interesting point is that although the former pagan kings often claimed the power and titles of the pagan gods, this power was claiming to act in the place of the true God of Heaven.

**“And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time. Daniel 7:25**

In this verse, we see the first time prophecy that shows how long Papal Rome would rule the world. This same number is found seven different places in the Bible. It adds up to 1260 days, and because in prophecy a ‘day’ means a real year, it is 1260 years.

**A ‘time’ = a year (a Biblical year is 360 days)**

**‘Times’ = 2 years**

**‘Dividing of time’ = a half year**

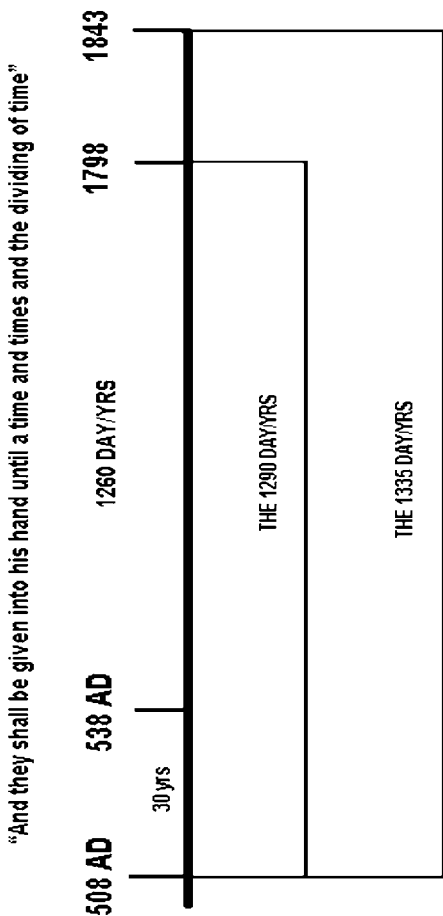
**Added together = 1260 prophetic ‘days’ or 1260 literal years.**

### **538 AD - 1798 AD**

The last of the three horns was ‘plucked up’ around the time that the Emperor Justinian in 533 AD, issued the famous decree giving the power and authority to the Papal Bishop of Rome. (Giving “him his power, and his seat, and great authority.” Revelation 13:2) The last of the three horns was plucked up and the Papacy ruled supreme after 538. When you add 1260 years to that, you come to 1798.

It is interesting that the title ‘Pontifex Maximus’ was held by the Emperors of Rome, taken from the High Priests of Sun Worship, when the Caesars began to declare they were the ‘sun-god’ on earth. It meant “Great Bridge Builder” and declared the owner had power over the souls, as well as the bodies of his worshippers. Only through them, like a bridge, could a soul pass to heaven.

When Justinian came to the throne, he did not feel comfortable to take on himself such a presumptuous title and refused it. Whereupon the Bishop of Rome quickly snapped it up. So we have the ‘Pontiff’ of Rome sitting in the seat of the Caesars.



What happened in 1798? It was then Berthier, one of Napoleon's Generals was sent to Rome where he took the Pope captive and Rome lost its power to rule the nations. The Church of Rome continued as a religion, but lost her power to rule over the governments.

During the years Rome ruled the world it did 'wear



out the saints of the Most High', by persecuting and killing millions of true followers of Jesus. God knows what is happening, and He will care for His people. Even though many dear Christians died, Jesus was close to each one to give him strength and help him. If we are faithful to the end, we will see these dear ones in heaven and hear their stories. Not one will be sorry that he died for Jesus and His truth!

**"But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end."**

**Daniel 7:26**

Whenever this terrible persecuting power is spoken of in the Bible prophecies, God is always quick to assure us that it will be judged and come to its end. For God's faithful ones, either of the past or future, this is a precious assurance.

We see five points here that help us know for sure what this 'Little Horn' power on the Roman beast really is.

1. It will speak 'Great Words' and Blasphemies against God.

2. It will 'wear out' God's people; persecute them.

3. It will think it can change God's laws that have to do with time.

4. It will arise after the Roman Empire is broken up to ten nations; among the nations of Europe and three nations will be destroyed as this power rises.

5. It will rule for 1260 day/years: 538 AD - 1798 AD

There is no other power on earth that can fit this description except the Roman Papacy. God wants us to be sure of what we believe, so He gives a lot of evidence.

Jesus assures us in this chapter 4 or 5 different times that this beast with the bold horn will come to its end in the judgment. Here are some of the sins of this power:

**1. Blasphemy.** The Roman priests claim to be able to forgive sins. They do this every day in the confessional, which is a little room where the people go to confess their sins to the priests, who pretend to forgive them.

The popes claim to be the vicars of Christ, which means they claim to take His place on earth. This is blasphemy against the Holy Spirit. Jesus said the Holy Spirit, who is

the 3rd Person of the Godhead, would take His place on earth. (In the Greek text 'Ante' means to take the place of, or be a Vicar of. So Ante-Christ or Antichrist, means to claim to take the place of, or be the Vicar of Christ. It does not mean, as commonly supposed, to be against Christ.)

The Pope also claims to be God and have all the rights of God. 'The Catholic Encyclopedia Vol. 6 p. 48, describes the pope as: 'not a mere man, but as it were God and the vicar of God.' Pope Leo XIII in one of his encyclical letters wrote: 'We hold upon this earth the place of God Almighty.' Pope Innocent III wrote: 'The pope is not simply a man but rather God on earth.' He also wrote: 'The pope is not only the representative of Jesus Christ but he is Jesus Christ Himself hidden under the veil of flesh.'

**2. Persecution.** The Western Watchman, a Roman Catholic periodical (December 24, 1908) stated: 'The church has persecuted. Only a tyro in history will deny that... Protestants were persecuted in France and Spain with the full approval of the church authorities. We have always defended the persecution of the Huguenots and the Spanish Inquisition.'

Dr. J. Dowling, History of Romanism, pages 541-542, states: 'From the birth of Popery in 606, to the present time, it is estimated by careful and credible historians, that more than fifty millions of the human family have been slaughtered for the crime of heresy by popish persecutors, an average of more than forty thousand murders for every year of the existence of Popery.'

**3. Claim to change God's times and laws.** Catholic literature consistently moves from the first of the Ten Commandments to the third, which is counted as number two. The Second Commandment, forbidding idolatry, is not found in the Roman Catholic catechism. (It is in the Catholic Bible)

For many years, the consistent teaching of the Roman Catholic Church was that Sabbath was changed to Sunday by the action of the Catholic Church. e.g. Geiermann: Convert's Catechism of Catholic Doctrine, 1946 ed. page

50. 'The church substituted Sunday for Saturday by the plenitude of that divine power which Jesus Christ bestowed upon her... The Third (really the fourth but they leave out #2) Commandment commands us to sanctify Sunday as the Lord's Day.'

The Roman Church claims that changing God's Law and putting the Sunday in place of the seventh day Sabbath, is the 'Mark of her power'.

**"And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him. Hitherto is the end of the matter. As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart." Daniel 7:27, 28**

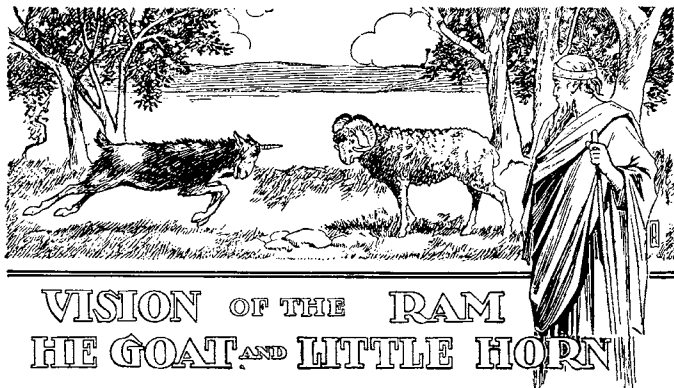
Remember in our study about Daniel 2 and the Great Image, we learned about the Rock that was cut out without hands and would destroy all the kingdoms and rule forever? Here we see the same thing. Jesus is telling us that His kingdom will be set up after the time of the judgment and will never fall. It is this special group that Jesus prepares that is used to usher in the 'kingdom'.

The 'saints' will be given the kingdom of Jesus to be their kingdom and they will never more have to worry about terrible beast kingdoms, which persecute and kill them for serving Jesus. (See verse 18)

On earth the saints may have been poor and despised. They were often killed or thrown into dungeons without even a trial. They saw their beloved Bibles torn up and burned, and their children killed or made slaves. It was so unfair, but God has not forgotten even one of His dear children.

The wicked ones who killed them often thought that nobody knew what they did in those dark dungeons, but angels were there, the 'watchers and the holy ones' were there, and it is all written down. God's children will be honored and those who persecuted them will have to answer for their deeds unless they repented while they lived.

God's side of this Great Controversy will win, even if Satan's hosts and the entire world try to stop it. Make sure you are on Jesus' side as his obedient child in this war.



**DANIEL 8**

## The Ram & the He-Goat

**“In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first. And I saw in a vision; and it came to pass, when I saw, that I was at Shushan in the palace, which is in the province of Elam; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai.” Daniel 8:1, 2**

Two years have elapsed since Daniel's previous vision. Daniel was now an old man. He had been in captivity a total of about fifty-five years; and as he was probably around sixteen or eighteen years of age when brought to Babylon, he would now be well over seventy. His vision about the four beasts in chapter 7 came to him while he was in bed, but this vision occurred while he was awake and in the palace.

**“Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last. I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beasts might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand; but he did according to his will, and became great.” Daniel 8:3, 4**

It was the third year of Belshazzar and Babylon had not yet fallen but so soon was that going to happen that it isn't mentioned in this vision, like it was in the last one. Daniel sees a great ram with one of its horns higher than the other one. It is pushing with its horns west, north and south and nothing could stand before it. These are the directions Medo-Persia did go and in that order.

This ram is Medo-Persia, and as we look back in chapter 7, we see that the bear raised up on one side; so this ram had two horns and one was higher than the other. This was to show that the Persian part of the empire was stronger than the Medes, their partners. Like a cruel bully, the Medo-Persian ram charged “westward, northward and southward,” in that very order. (The three ribs)

Now here is something interesting; in the vision of the four beasts Daniel was shown the nations and what they would do to the world in general. But this vision is different, it shows what the nations will do to God's people and his truth. We know this because the animals and symbols, rams and goats, in this new vision are found in the sanctuary services.

**“And as I was considering, behold, an he goat came from the west on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground: and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes. And he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power. And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns: and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and**

**stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand.” Daniel 8:5-7**

There was the ram, who had conquered everything, standing there so proud. Then all at once came a he-goat with one big horn between his eyes, he went so fast he didn't touch the ground. (Remember the leopard with the four wings?)

He ran right into the ram and knocked him down. He broke off his horns and stamped on him. That ram could do no more. Now this he-goat was the Greeks and the one big horn represented Alexander the Great, the leader who swiftly conquered the world. It is interesting that the Greeks did use a goat as one of their symbols just like Babylon did use a winged lion.

It seems Alexander the Great may have even been aware of the prophecy of Daniel. A ram and one-horned goat united, symbolizing the Persian and Macedonian kingdoms, and perhaps carved for Alexander the Great, was found on a signet gem now in the Florentine collection.

**“Therefore the he goat waxed very great: and when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven.” Daniel 8:8**

Now we see that rough goat standing so powerful and proud, but something happens; while he is strong, the big horn is broken off, and four horns come up instead. Now we would not expect that to happen when the goat is strong, but remember, Alexander the Great died just after he had conquered the entire world.

His four Generals divided the empire between them, as he had no adult son to rule after him. Actually his descendants were later murdered, so they could not claim the throne. The four horns like the four heads on the leopard, represented the four generals of Alexander the Great, which took over the kingdom following Alexander's death. These were: Cassander, who had Greece and its area; Lysimachus, who had Asia-minor; Ptolemy, who had Egypt; and Seleucus, who had Syria and Babylon.

At first there were many more generals fighting over the

throne; but it boiled down to four. Much later, in the time of their descendents, there were only two left.

Doesn't it make you feel safe to realize that God knows all what will happen before it does? And He never makes a mistake.

**“And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land.” Daniel 8:9**

Now I have to tell you a secret that many people that read prophecy don't know. It makes a lot of difference to how we know what God is telling us in these prophecies. In some languages they have what is called 'gender'. This means that words are considered either masculine or feminine. (Male or female)

English does not have this like some languages have. In English if I say 'his' you know I mean a boy or male. If I say 'hers' you know I mean a girl or female. But if I say tree or house, you do not think of them as male or female; but in French, and Greek and Hebrew they do have gender, and we know by how the sentences are written if the word is masculine or feminine. This was written in Hebrew and so knowing the gender helps us to understand the meaning.

In verse 8 it talks about the four horns and these are masculine, then it talks about four winds and these are feminine.

Now in verse 9 it says 'out of one of them' and people think it means out of one of the horns, but it doesn't, because in the sentence 'them' is feminine. It means out of one of the winds; out of one of the four winds, or the four directions in the world. The more we learn about Bible Prophecies, the more wonderful they are.

What we see here is Pagan Rome and how it conquered the world and also attacks God's people.

**“And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them.” Daniel 8:10**

Now in this verse "it" changes to feminine with a religious aspect to it, Papal Rome persecuting God's people.

Remember the terrible fourth beast in Daniel 7? How it stamped with its feet? Now this is Papal Rome who here is seen stamping on God's people and His truth.

We can read this verse: "And it (feminine) became great even to the host of the heavens. And it (fem.) made fall to the ground (some) from the host and (some) from the stars and trampled them."

It is interesting that here, as in other places in the Bible, the power behind the human power is also referred to; the one who cast down some of the host of heaven, ('stars: meaning angels'), was Satan, and he was the spirit behind the persecuting power of both Pagan and Papal Rome. But the terms 'hosts of heaven' and 'stars' also have a secondary application to God's faithful martyrs, the persecution of which we read about in Daniel 7:21, 25.

**"Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily {sacrifice} was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down." Daniel 8:11**

Now this verse is masculine again and shows Pagan Rome. Remember that Rome was ruling the Jews when Jesus was born. The Roman powers through Herod tried to kill Jesus even as a baby!

It was by Pagan Rome's authority that Jesus, our Prince and Prince of the Heavenly Hosts of angels, was crucified. So we know this is Pagan Rome. Now in the next few verses we have the gender thing again. Pagan Rome is masculine and another power that follows it, is feminine, this is Papal Rome.

Now there is another fact in the Hebrew that affects our understanding of this verse. It is that there are two different words in Daniel translated into English as 'take away'; one is 'cuwr' (soor) the other is 'ruwm' (room). cuwr means to take away but ruwm means actually to lift up and exalt. We see this in Daniel 11:12 where it is translated 'lifted up'. There are only 2 places in the Bible where ruwm is translated as 'take away' and both ought to be 'lift up'.

In this verse ruwm is repeated twice to show it was greatly lifted up and exalted. In Daniel 11:31 we see 'taken



away' again *but* this time it is the work cuwr which really does mean 'take away'.

The verse goes on: **“and by him (Masculine) the daily {sacrifice} was taken away, and the place of his (Masculine) sanctuary was cast down.”** The bolded part should read: “and through Pagan Rome, paganism was greatly lifted up and exalted, and the place of Pagan Rome’s sanctuary was cast down. Daniel 8:11.”

You see that word ‘sacrifice’ in your Bible? It is put in italics in the King James translation. That means the word is *not* in the original Hebrew. The translators added it because they *thought* it should be there, but it does *not* belong there.

The word translated ‘Daily’ or ‘continuance’ here, refers to Paganism, which had been a continual desolating power throughout history. The translators got mixed up here because the word ‘ha-tamid’ in other parts of the Bible is an adjective, meaning ‘continual’ and often refers to the sanctuary services. But Daniel is the only place in scripture where the word is actually used as a noun.

Pagan Rome had a sanctuary in Rome, the pantheon, where they kept all their heathen gods. Every time Pagan Rome would conquer a country, they would bring back its idol-gods and add them to the Pantheon, where they could go and worship them all. They thought all these gods would certainly give them great power.

There is another way that pagan Rome greatly lifted up paganism, even to the Prince of the Host; they began to declare their Caesars were gods and forced people to worship them.

The biblical and historical records are clear and confirm that the one exalting himself to the Prince of the host is characterized by pagan Rome, the forerunner to papal Rome who inherited the same characteristics.

The last part of this verse is referring to Pagan Rome that the ‘*place* of its sanctuary’; the city of Rome, would be ‘cast down’ when it came to the end of its ‘time’ or 360 year rule: 31 BC - 330 AD. (See Daniel 11:24) After this time, the city of Rome was no longer the capitol of the Roman

Empire, which was moved to Constantinople. This opened the way for the Papal power to become stronger.

**“And an host was given him against the daily {sacrifice} by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered.” Daniel 8:12**

We can read this as: It (feminine) was given even a host against the daily by means of transgression. And it (feminine) cast down truth to the ground and it (feminine) worked and it (feminine) prospered.

This is a very interesting verse that we should take special notice of. It is telling in a remarkable way the history of how Papal Rome was able to become the world-ruling power at the beginning of the 1260 day/years that it ruled. It says an ‘host’ was given him. (The Papacy) What was the ‘host’ that allowed this strange little-horn power to get control of the world?

“By reason of transgression”, what is this ‘transgression’ here? It is using the power of the State to enforce religious decrees. It is the Union of Church and State. Whenever and wherever it occurs, it is a terrible force for evil and God has forbidden it; but it is the secret of the power of the Papal See.

Up until this time, the nations of Europe were pagan, and had not been sympathetic to Roman Catholicism, but prophecy states that “arms shall stand on his part.” (Daniel 11:31) In fulfillment of this, Clovis, King of France, came to the military aid of the Papacy, and France became the first Catholic nation. Clovis dedicated his sword and his throne to the Papacy in 496, and soon the other six European kings did likewise.

Between that time and AD 508, by alliances, capitulations and conquests, the Arborici, the Roman garrisons in the West, Brittany, the Burgundians, and the Visigoths, were brought into subjection. So thus ‘the Daily’ had been taken out of the way and no longer impeded the Papal rise to power.

In the war against the three horns; the Ostrogoths, Vandals, and Heruli, we see that by 538 the last of them were

driven from Rome, and soon eliminated, and the Papal horn was ruling the world.

**“Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain saint which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily {sacrifice}, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot? And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.” Daniel 8:13, 14**

Now Daniel hears two heavenly beings talking about these cruel powers who were going to trample on God’s truth and His people and they ask “How long is this going to go on? How long will evil trample on the good?” The question is of duration of the vision and the word translated ‘vision’ here is ‘chazown’ (khaw-zone). This word means the entire vision.

Then the answer comes: “Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.” Remember when Jesus was on earth, how He went into the temple and drove out the wicked ones who were disobeying God? Well this verse tells of a time that God had set from way back, and when that time would come, He would begin a special work that would lead to the end of all cruel and wicked powers.

We learn that this time prophecy of 2300 days was to start when the decree was given to allow the Jews to rebuild Jerusalem. (see Daniel 9:25) This happened in 457 BC.

In certain time prophecies a ‘day’ means a real year of time. So 2300 days mean 2300 years. When we figure out from 457 BC and add 2300 years it takes us to 1844. (Remember there is no year ‘0’ between BC and AD!) This was when Jesus went from the Holy Place in heaven to the Most Holy place, and began a special work called the ‘cleansing of the sanctuary’. We call it the ‘Investigative Judgment’ and it parallels the ‘Day of Atonement’ in the ancient Hebrew Sanctuary ceremonies.

Now what do all these big words mean to you and me? It means that God had set a time when He would begin to

look at the lives all those who had claimed to be His people from the beginning of the earth. By looking at the records of their lives, He could find out if they really loved Him and were His children or not. Then all those who had really given their hearts to God, and believed on Him, and obeyed Him, would have their names kept in the Book of Life to be taken to heaven when Jesus comes.

The cruel little-horn power, also represented by the leopard-like beast of Revelation 13, claimed, and still claims to be God's church. But in the judgment this power is being judged along, with all who have ever claimed to belong to the God of Heaven.

The names of those who claimed to belong to God, but did not let Jesus change their selfish hearts and remove their sins, are taken out of the Book of Life and they will not be able to go home when Jesus comes; instead they will be destroyed.

All those cruel powers that claimed to be doing work for Jesus, while they were really killing and hurting God's dear people, will not be kept in the Book of Life, unless they, like Paul, had repented and stopped doing this.

It is good to know that God will only let the cruel and wicked things go on for a short while; soon Jesus will put an end to what hurts His dear children and take us home.

**"And it came to pass, when I, even I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision. So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end shall be the vision."**  
**Daniel 8:15-17**

Daniel wanted to understand what all the things he was seeing in the vision meant, and so he asked. In verse 16 we see the angel Gabriel asked to explain it. Now in this verse there is a different Hebrew word that is translated 'vision'. It is 'mar'eh', and it means a small part of the vision rather

than ‘chazown’ which means the entire vision; sort of like a snapshot compared to a whole movie. Jesus was the one who asked the angel Gabriel to explain to Daniel what part of the vision meant.

Notice how Daniel was affected by the presence of these holy beings. Daniel is one of the few people in the Bible that there is no record made of his ever being unfaithful to the Lord; and yet even he falls helpless to the ground when Jesus speaks and the angel comes near. What do you think will happen to the wicked when Jesus returns in all His glory and all His angels?

Now Daniel knew that God had told the Prophet Jeremiah that the Jewish people would be kept in Babylon as slaves for 70 years, and then they would be allowed to return to Jerusalem. Daniel knew that soon those years would end and had been praying about it.

Gabriel then told Daniel that the whole vision, the ‘chazown’ would be at the time of the end of the world.

**“Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: but he touched me, and set me upright. And he said, Behold, I will make thee know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: for at the time appointed the end shall be.” Daniel 8:18, 19**

Gabriel strengthened Daniel here and helped him up. Then he told him that he would help him know what these things meant but that they were to happen at the time of the end, not in Daniel’s day.

The ‘last end of the indignation’ is referring to the end of the prophecy of the ‘Seven Times’ or 2520 years. The nation of Israel was divided, right after the reign of Solomon, who had lead the people into idol worship. There was then a Northern kingdom, the ten tribes, and a Southern kingdom, or Judah.

They both continued in idolatry, and the 2520 curse began first with the Northern tribes in 723 BC, when Hoshea was taken into captivity by Assyria, and second with Judah in 677 BC, when Manasseh was captured.

Another name for these Seven Times is the ‘Indigna-



**Signet Ring of Alexander the Great**

tion'. So there was a first Indignation and a last Indignation. The first one ended in 1798 and the last one in 1844, the same time as the 2300 day-year prophecy ends. So when Gabriel says 'the last end' he is referring to the Indignation or 2520 years that ended in 1844. This was going to end at the same time as 'the time appointed' for the special Judgment Day at the end of the 2300 days, or literal years.

(\*\*See Note below)

**"The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia. And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king. Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power." Daniel 8:20-22**

As you know, Alexander died right after conquering the world, and so the kingdoms following were 'not in his power'.

**"And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up. And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and**

**shall destroy the mighty and the holy people.” Daniel 8:23-24**

Notice here this ‘Mystery King’ destroys and conquers but ‘not by his own power’; the papacy always gets the power of state and kings and governments to do its dirty-work and thus it persecutes God’s people.

**“And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.”**

**Daniel 8:25**

‘Craft’ or as we might say ‘craftiness’ shall prosper; under this religious-political combination, lying, hypocrisy, sneakiness, dishonest and unjust practices are the rule of the day! No human effort will stop the march of this king of fierce countenance. Only God will bring him down, and none shall help him. Praise the Lord! (See Daniel 11:45)

This verse slips back in gender to the masculine, and shows us Pagan Rome again, and how it used peace treaties to extend its power, and stood up against the Prince of Princes, Jesus. But the Papal power also did this in the person of His people as well.

He shall be broken ‘without hand’. Remember in our study of Daniel 2, the stone that struck the image on the feet and destroyed it, was ‘cut out without hand’? Well this shows that God himself will finally bring all these cruel, despotic powers to an end.

**“And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told is true: wherefore shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for many days. And I Daniel fainted, and was sick certain days; afterward I rose up, and did the king’s business; and I was astonished at the vision, but none understood it.” Daniel 8:26, 27**

Now as the angel explains to him about long periods of time, many days, Daniel is shocked and afraid that maybe the Jews would not be returning home after all. It bothered him so much that the dear old man fainted. Also he was horrified at what he had seen about the terrible little-horn power and what it would do to the dear children of God.

God was telling Daniel things that he was to write down so His people that live on earth today, in the last days of time, would be able to know what God was doing.

We are living in the final scenes of the Great Controversy between Christ and Satan. The Judgment of those who died claiming to belong to God, has been going on in heaven since 1844. Soon the great test will come, in which the living will demonstrate whose side they have chosen to be on. Day by day we are making choices to obey or disobey; to serve God or ourselves. Even in the little daily things of life, we are making choices, and often we are not even aware of it.

The prophecies are there to warn us, but also to encourage Jesus' dear people today. Daniel's messages were written for you and me; they tell us that God is in charge, and if we give our hearts to Him, and choose Jesus to be our own dear Savior and Lord, we can know that we will be loved and cared for by Jesus and our Heavenly Father. Then someday, we will go home to heaven when Jesus comes again. That time is soon; be ready!

## **DANIEL 9**

### **Daniel's Prayer**

**"In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans; In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem."**  
**Daniel 9:1, 2**

Daniel was not only a man of prayer, he was also a man who studied very carefully the scriptures; the books of Moses, and the writings of the prophets before him and during his time.



"A copy of the letters sent by Jeremiah to the Hebrew captives in Babylon, and of the letters sent by the false prophets to these captives and to the authorities of Jerusalem, together with a story of the controversy between the true and the false, is found in the twenty-seventh to the twenty-ninth chapters of Jeremiah.

"It was immediately after this interchange of letters between Jeremiah and the elders of the Israelites in captivity, that the prophet was instructed to write in a book all that had been revealed to him regarding the restoration of Israel. This is recorded in the thirtieth and the thirty-first chapters of Jeremiah.

"These, with the prophecies of the twenty-fifth chapter, are the letters and the records that Daniel the prophet, during "the first year of the reign of Darius the Mede," prayerfully studied, three-score years and more after they were written." (Review and Herald March 21, 1907)

**"And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:"**  
**Daniel 9:3**

When he learned from the writings of the prophet Jeremiah that Israel was to be in captivity for 70 years and the promise was that they would then come back to Jerusalem and be a nation again, he did not just think, "OK, fine, that's nice. I'll just wait until it happens." Oh, no! He set himself to fast and pray, to plead with God that indeed the promises would be fulfilled. He claimed those promises.

Daniel was familiar with the circumstances connected with Jeremiah's testimonies given very soon after the beginning of the Babylonian captivity. He well knew that the promise of the return was sure; and yet, a short time before, "in the third year of the reign of King Belshazzar," the angel of the Lord had instructed him in vision, "Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed."

Daniel "sought for the meaning" of the vision. He could not understand the relation sustained by the seventy years' captivity to the twenty-three hundred years that were

to elapse before the cleansing of God's sanctuary. Gabriel gave a partial interpretation; and when he declared that the vision "shall be for many days," Daniel fainted.

**"And I prayed unto the LORD my God, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments; We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments:" Daniel 9:4, 5**

Now here is a very interesting thing; Daniel is one of the few people in the Bible that we have no record of any sin that he committed, and even his enemies had not been able to get anything bad they could charge him with. He was called 'greatly beloved' by an angel, and yet he is here seen repenting in sackcloth and ashes and confessing his sins and the sins of Israel, as if he were as guilty of them as the worst law-breaker among them. Truly, godly people are always humble of heart, and never boast of great goodness or sinlessness.

**"Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land." Daniel 9:6**

Daniel well knew that it was because Israel had turned from her obedience to the Laws of God, and followed the ways of the heathen, that God had allowed her to be conquered and taken into captivity. He clearly states that this was what the sins of Israel had brought upon her. God had sent many prophets with warning messages, but they had been ignored and persecuted. Reproof is never popular in any age.

**"O Lord, righteousness belongeth unto thee, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, that are near, and that are far off, through all the countries whither thou hast driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against thee." Daniel 9:7**

Daniel does not proclaim his own fidelity before the

Lord. Instead of claiming to be pure and holy, this honored prophet humbly identifies himself with the very sinful of Israel. The wisdom which God had imparted to him was as far superior to the wisdom of the great men of the world as the light of the sun shining in the heavens at noonday is brighter than the feeblest star.

Yet ponder the prayer from the lips of this man so highly favored of Heaven. With deep humiliation, with tears and rending of heart, he pleads for himself and for his people. He lays his soul open before God, confessing his own unworthiness and acknowledging the Lord's greatness and majesty.

**"O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against thee. To the Lord our God belong mercies and forgivenesses, though we have rebelled against him; Neither have we obeyed the voice of the LORD our God, to walk in his laws, which he set before us by his servants the prophets. Yea, all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that is written in the law of Moses the servant of God, because we have sinned against him."** Daniel 9:8-11

In Deuteronomy 28 Moses, just before he died, warned Israel clearly that if they obeyed God and walked in His ways, they would be blessed, but if they did not and went the ways of the heathen, they would be cursed. In Leviticus 26 we see that if they continued in disobedience there would come upon them the terrible punishment of the 'seven times' that would last 2520 years, and yet they had gone into idolatry and all sorts of wickedness.

**"And he hath confirmed his words, which he spake against us, and against our judges that judged us, by bringing upon us a great evil: for under the whole heaven hath not been done as hath been done upon Jerusalem. As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: yet made we not our prayer before the LORD our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth. Therefore hath the LORD watched upon the evil, and brought it upon**

**us: for the LORD our God is righteous in all his works which he doeth: for we obeyed not his voice.” Daniel 9:12-14**

Now Daniel declares that the very words written in the Books of Moses had verily been fulfilled and justly so. What were these words? The Seven Times or 2520 years. In Leviticus 26:40-42, we see the instructions as to how they were to pray to God in repentance, so He would remember His covenant with Israel, and we see Daniel here praying according to those very instructions.

**“And now, O Lord our God, that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and hast gotten thee renown, as at this day; we have sinned, we have done wickedly. O Lord, according to all thy righteousness, I beseech thee, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, thy holy mountain: because for our sins, and for the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people are become a reproach to all that are about us. Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord’s sake. O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.” Daniel 9:15-19**

False sanctification carries with it a boastful, self-righteous spirit which is foreign to the religion of the Bible. Meekness and humility are the fruits of the Spirit. The prophet Daniel was an example of true sanctification. His long life was filled up with noble service for his Master. He was a man “greatly beloved” of Heaven, and was granted such honors as have rarely been given to mortals. Yet his purity of character and unwavering fidelity were equaled only by his humility and contrition. Instead of claiming to be pure and holy, this honored prophet identified himself with the really sinful of Israel, as he pleaded before God in behalf of his people.

**“And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing**

**my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God; Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation.” Daniel 9:20, 21**

As Daniel’s prayer is going forth, the angel Gabriel comes sweeping down from the heavenly courts to tell him that his petitions are heard and answered. This mighty angel has been commissioned to give him skill and understanding, to open before him the mysteries of future ages. Thus, while earnestly seeking to know and understand the truth, Daniel was brought into communion with Heaven’s delegated messenger. Heaven is no further away today, then it was for Daniel.

**“And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision.” Daniel 9:22, 23**

Have not we as great need to call upon God as had Daniel? The same God who heard Daniel’s prayer will hear ours when we come to Him in contrition. Our necessities are as urgent, our difficulties are as great, and we need to have the same intensity of purpose, and in faith roll our burden upon the great Burden-bearer. There is need for hearts to be as deeply moved in our time, as in the time when Daniel prayed.

## ***DANIEL 9***

# **The Time Prophecy Explained**

You are about to study a very long and significant time prophecy in the Bible. Given more than 500 years before the death of Christ, it accurately pinpoints the time of His sacrifice. As the only place in the Old Testament that speaks of a coming “Messiah” by that term, it ranks at the top of all Messianic prophecies.

Yet this prophecy, found in the eighth and ninth chapters of the book of Daniel, moves beyond the earthly ministry of Christ to provide a panorama of His present work for us in the courts of heaven.

You will remember that the prophecy of Daniel 8 begins with a ram and a he-goat. After discussing the goat's horns, the vision then turns to the activities of the little horn, which magnifies itself to defy heaven, casting truth to the ground and trampling upon the sanctuary and the host.

When Daniel had heard about the horrible things that the little horn on the terrible beast was going to do to God's people, (Daniel 7) he was sick for a while. Now he is shown the same power from another angle, in the vision of the ram being overcome by the he-goat. Again a horn arising from one of the four winds in the end of this vision catches his attention and we see it leads us to the same power.

**"Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain saint which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot? And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed." Daniel 8:13,14**

Daniel needed to understand this vision and Jesus commissions Gabriel, the highest angel, who occupies the place from which Lucifer fell when he became Satan, to help him.

**"And it came to pass, when I, even I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision." Daniel 8:15, 16**

The angel began to explain the vision. He told Daniel that the ram represented Medo-Persia; the goat and its horns represented Greece. He enlarged a little on the activities of the little horn, but said nothing more about the time factor involved.

**"Afterward I rose up, and did the king's business; and I was astonished at the vision, but none understood it."**

**Daniel 8:27.**

Now after Daniel had been fasting and praying for further understanding, Gabriel returns and tells him more about the amazing time-prophecy.

**“Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding. At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to show thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision. Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.” Daniel 9:21-24**

Now Gabriel swiftly returns and begins to teach Daniel the secrets of the wonderful time prophecy.

Seventy weeks equal 490 days. Subtract that from the total 2,300 days, and 1,810 days of the prophecy are left. In the Bible God has a way of showing special time-prophecies. He uses a day to equal a year of real time.

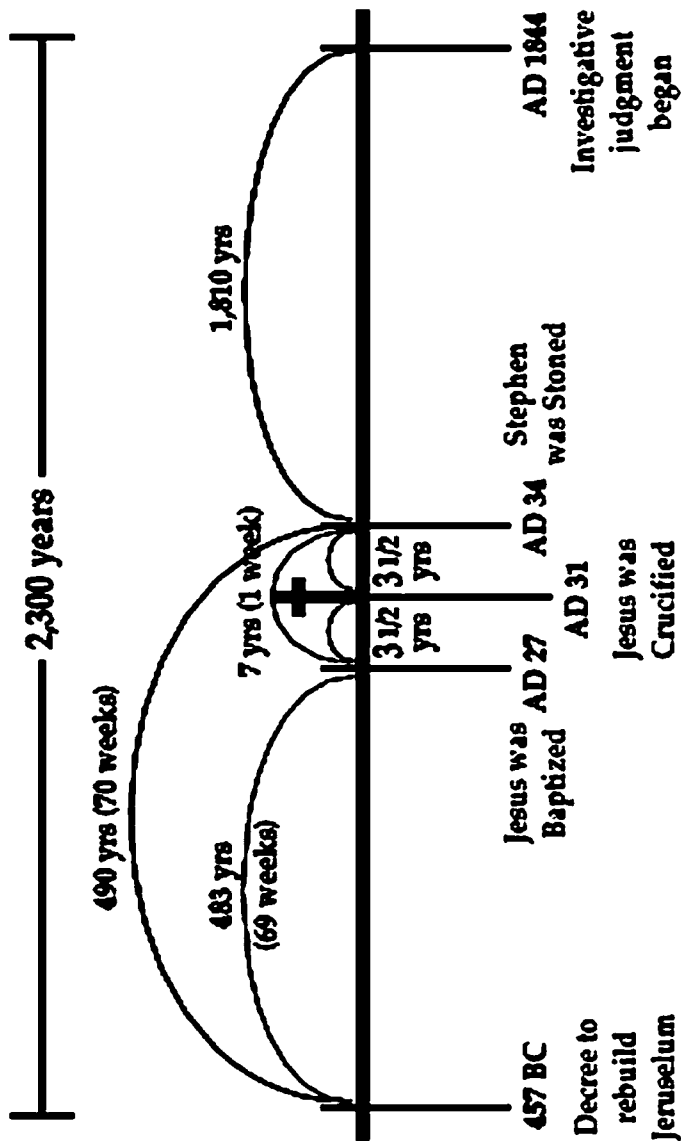
**“And when thou hast accomplished them, lie again on thy right side, and thou shalt bear the iniquity of the house of Judah forty days: I have appointed thee each day for a year.” Ezekiel 4:6.**

**“Each day for a year.” Numbers 14:34.**

Applying this rule, 2,300 prophetic days is actually 2,300 literal years, the first 490 of which pertained especially to the Jews. The time period would begin when the command went forth to restore and rebuild Jerusalem.

**“Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.” Daniel 9:25**

In fulfilling God's command, three kings of Persia





would need to make decrees regarding the rebuilding of Jerusalem.

Ezra 6:14 “And the elders of the Jews builded, and they prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they builded, and finished it, according to the commandment of the God of Israel, and according to the commandment of Cyrus, and Darius, and Artaxerxes king of Persia.”

The final decree, that of Artaxerxes, is recorded in Ezra 7, and went into effect in the autumn of 457 BC

457 BC + 2300 years = 1844 AD

The Messiah was to appear after seven weeks and sixty-two weeks. That is sixty-nine weeks of prophetic time.

**“And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.” Daniel 9:26**

Sixty-nine weeks are 483 prophetic days; 483 literal years. From the autumn of 457 BC, 483 years takes us to the autumn of AD 27. According to the prophecy, that is when the Messiah would appear. “Messiah” is the Hebrew word for “Anointed one”. The Bible tells us that “God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power.” Acts 10:38. That anointing took place at His baptism (John 1:32). Jesus was baptized in the autumn of AD 27, the precise time foretold in Daniel’s prophecy.

After Jesus was baptized, and God sent a special anointing of the Holy Spirit, then He was the Messiah, which means Anointed One. “He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ.” John 1:41

Over 300 Prophecies were fulfilled in Jesus life and ministry!

As Jesus began His public ministry, He showed His awareness of His prophetic dateline from Daniel’s Prophecy. “And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.” Mark 1:15

Paul said that Jesus came right on schedule. "But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law." Galatians 4:4

In the 'middle of the week' Jesus' death on the cross as the Lamb of God, slain from the foundation of the world, brought to fulfillment the sanctuary sin offerings and the Passover Lamb, and thus brought them forever to an end. Although the unbelieving priests continued to offer sacrifices for a while, these ceremonies no longer had any meaning.

**"And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate." Daniel 9:27**

That "week" would be the last seven years of the "70-week" portion of the prophecy. It extended from the autumn of AD 27 to the autumn of AD 34.

In the spring of AD 31, exactly half way through that seven-year period, Jesus brought to an end the whole system of sacrifices and oblations, by offering Himself as the Lamb of God, to whom the whole sacrificial system had pointed.

On the 14th day of the 1st month at 3 PM; Jesus our Passover was slain for us; this was an exact fulfillment!

Also, as we see in Verse 26; it is telling us that because of the rejection of 'Messiah' the Prince, the city and temple would be destroyed. This finally occurred in AD 70, but no Christians perished in that siege because they believed the warning Jesus had given, recorded in Matthew 24. Thus they fled from the city, when they saw the signal Jesus told them to watch for, before the final siege happened.

An amazing event happened in the temple in Jerusalem when Jesus died at the exact time for the sacrifice of the Passover Lamb, which signified that its ritual services would never again have any meaning. "And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;" Matthew 27:51

**"Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and**

**upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.” Daniel 9:24**

The “seventy-week” portion of the 2,300 years ended in AD 34. In that year Israel’s probationary time ceased, and they sealed their rejection of Christ by stoning Stephen. With the Jews no longer God’s chosen people, the gospel began to be proclaimed to the Gentiles, and the Christian church inherited all the privileges promised to the descendants of Abraham (Galatians 3:29).

The temple and the city of Jerusalem were destroyed by Roman armies in AD 70 (Daniel 9:26, 27; Mark 13:14).

But the vision of the 2300 days still left 1810 more, ending in 1844.

**“So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end shall be the vision.” Daniel 8:17**

From the autumn of AD 34, 1,810 years of the prophecy remained. Add 1,810 to 34 and it brings us to the autumn of the year 1844, which the prophecy refers to as “the time of the end”, that is, the end of that time prophecy. At the end of the “2300-day” period the Sanctuary was to be ‘cleansed’:

**“And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.” Daniel 8:14**

The angel told Daniel this vision was not for his day.

**“And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told is true: wherefore shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for many days.” Daniel 8:26**

The part of Daniel’s book dealing with these extended time prophecies, was ‘sealed’; that is, it would not be fully understood until towards the time these prophecies were due to end. ‘Time of the End’ here meant the end of the time prophecies.

**“But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.” Daniel 12:4**

‘Running to and fro’ in the Hebrew meant searching here and there in the scriptures for the purpose of understanding their meaning, and the promise is that ‘knowledge would be increased’. In the early 1800s all over the world people began to turn to the book of Daniel and many began to bring out the secrets of the ‘sealed book’ and preach or write on these mysteries.

Let us look now at the Gospel in the Old Testament and the end-time work of Christ. At no time in the world’s history has anyone ever earned salvation by his own works, or by rituals and ceremonies. No one ever bought their salvation with the blood of animals, or gifts and money. In both Old and New Testament times, people were saved by the Grace of God and Faith in the merits of Jesus. The offering of the sacrifice was to show faith in the coming Redeemer. The following texts make it clear that people who lived before the cross were saved on the same terms as were people in New Testament times.

“I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.” Romans 1:16.

“For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them.” Hebrews 4:2.

“Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.” Acts 4:12.

“But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.” Galatians 1:8.

The Old Testament itself teaches salvation through Christ. The “scriptures” spoken of in the following texts are the Old Testament. These texts make it clear that the Old Testament scriptures teach the same gospel of salvation through Christ that we find in the New Testament.

“Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures.” 1 Corinthians 15:3.

“From a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through

faith which is in Christ Jesus.” 2 Timothy 3:15.

“Then he said unto them, ‘O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?’ And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.” Luke 24:25-27.

The Bible presents one gospel from Genesis to Revelation, one plan of salvation for humanity. The Bible calls it “the everlasting gospel” (Revelation 14:6), the “everlasting covenant” (Psalm 105:10; Hebrews 13:20).

## ***DANIEL 10***

# **Gabriel Comes to Help**

**“In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision. In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.” Daniel 10:1-3**

Again we find Daniel fasting and praying to understand the vision that had been given to him. Notice that fasting in the Bible does not always mean going totally without eating; in this case Daniel ate very plain food, nothing fancy. He prayed earnestly for help.

He was still worried that the Jews might not get to return to Jerusalem as the prophecy in Jeremiah had said. He knew God was true, and His word never fails but he also knew that many of the Jews were still in rebellion against God and were not obeying Him.

This is one of the important differences between a ‘psychic’ and a real prophet of God. A psychic just goes into a trance and gets his information (or pretends to) whenever

he wants; a true prophet must wait for God to see fit to give him information.

**“And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is Hiddekel; Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz: His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.” Daniel 10:4-6**

Turn over to Revelation 1 in your Bible, and read there the description of what Jesus looked like when He came to see John; then you will know Who it was that Daniel saw. It was Jesus, who evidently came with the angel Gabriel to Daniel. This description is similar to that given by John when Christ was revealed to him upon the Isle of Patmos. No less a personage than the Son of God appeared to Daniel. Our Lord comes with another heavenly messenger to teach Daniel what would take place in the latter days.

**“And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves.” Daniel 10:7**

Now Daniel was down by the river ‘Hiddekel’ (the Tigris) and he had people with him. They did not see what Daniel saw, but they knew something was happening. They were afraid and quickly ran away to hide! Unless a person truly belongs to God, he will be terrified when heavenly beings draw near. Notice what happened to Daniel:

**“Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, and there remained no strength in me: for my comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength. Yet heard I the voice of his words: and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground.” Daniel 10:8, 9**

There he was on his face on the ground helpless. Then he was given strength and the angel helped him up. But even then he ‘stood trembling.’ If you meet people who boast that they know God and yet they are proud and like to brag

about how holy they are, you can know for sure that they don't really know God, they have never really come close to Him; because anybody who really talks with God, will be quiet and very humble.

**“And, behold, an hand touched me, which set me upon my knees and upon the palms of my hands. And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent. And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling. Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.” Daniel 10:10-13**

Now we see a very important thing here; Gabriel tells Daniel how his prayers had been heard right from the first day, but Gabriel also tells him, that he had been working with Cyrus to get him to fulfill the prophecy, and allow the Jews to return to Jerusalem. Who was the “Prince of Persia”? In this case it was Satan influencing the man who was the King of Persia. Satan was working there to try and stop God's work; and for three weeks the king seemed more interested in listening to Satan. Many unseen battles go on that humans have no idea of.

But then it says Michael came to help him and the battle was won. Who is Michael? It is Jesus. The actual meaning of ‘Michael, one of the chief princes,’ is ‘Michael, the chief or first of the princes.’ The name ‘Michael’ means ‘Who is like the Most High.’ This title was coveted by Lucifer. See Isaiah 14:14. But it rightly belongs to the One we know as Jesus Christ. You will find in the Bible that whenever Michael is named, it is involving something to do with the battle between Christ and Satan.

Then Gabriel tells Daniel that he is going to stay with Cyrus, fighting to have him follow the will of God and when he would leave, then the Medo Persian kingdom

would fall to Greece.

Always remember that no matter how dark and scary things in this world may be; God is in charge and He will only allow Satan to go so far, and no further. If you are surrendered to Jesus, you are safe under His wings.

**“Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision is for many days.” Daniel 10:14**

This was the reason Gabriel was there to talk to Daniel, to help him to understand. God wants us to understand what He has shown to us in the Bible Prophecies. He will help us also, if we pray and ask Him to teach us.

Here are some more facts about Gabriel: The words of the angel, “I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God,” [Luke 1:19] show that he holds a position of high honor in the heavenly courts. When he came with a message to Daniel, he said, “There is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael [Christ] your Prince.” Daniel 10:21. Of Gabriel the Saviour speaks in the Revelation, saying that “He sent and signified it by His angel unto His servant John.” Revelation 1:1. And to John the angel declared, “See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.” Revelation 22:9. Wonderful thought, that the angel who stands next in honor to the Son of God, is the one chosen to open the purposes of God to sinful men.

Don’t ever think that you are not important to Jesus; He would send every angel out of heaven to come and help you rather than have one of His true children overcome by Satan!

**“And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb. And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength.” Daniel 10:15-16**

Then Daniel became dumb (couldn’t speak) and fell on



his face again. The angel touched him so he could speak and tried to comfort him telling him, "O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent." Then the angel changed and appeared as a man and finally Daniel could stand, after being strengthened again.

**"For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, straightway there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me." Daniel 10:17**

This is another sign of a true prophet of God; they do not breathe the whole time they are in a vision! We do not know how long Daniel was in vision, but Ellen White was sometimes in vision for more than an hour and she didn't breathe the whole time. This was often proven, even by medical doctors.

**"Then there came again and touched me one like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me, And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me. Then said he, Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? and now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come." Daniel 10:18-20**

Again notice the "Prince of Persia" which is Satan in this passage. All through the history of this world and still today, God's angels work with this earth's rulers to guide and bring about events according to His will.

**"But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince." Daniel 10:21**

"The Lord God will do nothing, but He revealeth His secret unto His servants the prophets." While "the secret things belong unto the Lord our God, those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children forever." Amos 3:7; Deuteronomy 29:29.

God has given these things to us, and His blessing will attend the reverent, prayerful study of the prophetic

scriptures. There seems to be a lot of people running around these days that are quick to tell you that there is no sense for you to study and learn the Bible prophecies and truths, because only the important people with many years in worldly schools can tell you what they mean.

This is a lie and it is the same lie that allowed the Roman Papacy to control the people for so long. They didn't let the people read the Bible for themselves, but told them only the important people, the church leaders could understand it.

Don't be fooled by this now. If you can read, you can start to learn the Bible and prophecies for yourself. And if you pray and ask God to send his angels and the Holy Spirit to teach you and ask to be in the School of Christ; He will teach you! Oh, you may not see the angel, but after a while, you will get to know he is there. God wants you to know, don't let anyone take that away from you.

Now there is another thought I want to share with you: If one angel from heaven caused the Roman guard to fall as dead men, how can those who are unprepared and unholy, bear the sight of Jesus in the glory of His Father, and ten thousand angels accompanying Him, and live? O how can sinners bear this sight! They will cry for rocks and mountains to fall on them, and hide them from the face of Him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb.

Remember how the people who were with Daniel when the vision came, were terrified and ran to hide themselves? They were probably not believers in God. In order to be able to bear the presence of heavenly beings, we must totally belong to God.

But even Daniel was overcome by the presence of the heavenly beings. But, and here is the good news; God strengthened him. If Daniel would have been living a sinful life, he would have died when the heavenly beings came to him. But he belonged fully to Jesus.

There are people, even church leaders, today who are telling people; "Oh, don't worry about the sins in your life. Jesus understands. You can do whatever you like and just ask Jesus to forgive and you will still go to heaven." This

is a lie and those who tell it are working for Satan whether they know it or not!

As you read the Bible and get to really know God's truths, you will learn that any sin that is not forsaken (that means you haven't chosen to give it up, and stop doing it, in the strength of Jesus) is not forgiven. To be ready to meet Jesus; there must be no sins left that we have not asked Jesus to forgive, and allowed Him to remove from our lives. Jesus only forgives those sins we are willing for Him to remove from our lives.

What if you do not feel willing to give up a sin? Don't despair; just ask Jesus to make you willing; tell Him "I am willing to be made willing". Then things you think you can never give up, will be easy to throw away in the power of Jesus. Remember that it is Jesus' own Victory that is given to us, we can't do it our selves, but Jesus won't do it without our choosing and asking.

## ***DANIEL 11***

### **The Latter Days**

Chapter 11 is a wonderful chapter. The three chapters 10-12 are really one story. The angel Gabriel is the one who is speaking. He is explaining in detail to Daniel events that will take place down through history, right to the end. It isn't a completely new vision, but more detailed information about the history visions in Daniel 2, 7 and 8; but this time in plain language instead of symbols.

In order to understand this story, we need to look at the events of history as they happened from Daniel's day to now. It can be hard today to find a good history book that will tell us the true happenings, as there have been many people busy changing the history books. Also History is no longer taught in school as much as it used to be. We are thankful that Jesus has kept many old books from being destroyed so we can get the facts.

Why is this? Well, Satan is planning to get people to

do some things that history plainly shows are wrong and stupid. He wants the leaders of the world to give the power back to the pope of Rome, like he had in the Dark Ages. If people knew all about what happened in the Dark Ages, they would not be so happy to go along with this idea. So agents get busy and rewrite history, get rid of important history books from libraries, and tell people lies instead.

How do we know this? Researchers have often found out as they were using certain books and shortly went back to use them again, that they were told they were lost or destroyed. Thankfully, God has also preserved many old history books and has laid it on the hearts of some of His people to reprint them.

**“Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him. And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.” Daniel 11:1, 2**

Back in Chapter 10 the first verse says: “In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long.” This particular ‘Time Appointed’ in verse 1 in Daniel 10; is the Hebrew word ‘Saba’. It gives the sense of an army, or a warfare, or service. Some translations put it ‘Even the great warfare was long’. RSV says ‘it was a great conflict’. Moffatt’s says ‘a true revelation of a great conflict’.

Daniel was shown a great conflict, and Daniel 11:2 and onward is a history of the conflict between different powers struggling for control of the world. These truths need to be studied very closely.

Gabriel in chapter 10 described a struggle that was going on with the king of Persia against the ‘prince of Persia’. Satan was trying to influence Cyrus and thus keep the decree from going forth to restore the Jews to Jerusalem, and prevent the fulfilment of prophecy. There is a warfare going on here that has to do with the story of Michael, and

the Great Controversy between Christ and Satan.

In verse 1, Gabriel tells Daniel that he was also supporting Darius the Mede. He confirmed and strengthened him in his first year.

History tells us that Cyrus is the one that conquered Babylon. Darius the Mede, an older man, was the uncle of Cyrus, and he put Darius in charge of Babylon after he conquered it. Darius the Mede is the one that was tricked into having Daniel thrown into the lion's den. He was the king of Babylon, but he wasn't the king of the entire empire of the Medes and Persians, Cyrus was.

"Darius the Mede, that is, Cyaxares, the uncle of Cyrus, took the kingdom; for Cyrus allowed him the title of all his conquests as long as he lived."

Humphrey Prideaux, *The Old and New Testament Connected in the History of the Jews*, Vol. I, p. 137.

Gabriel continues: "And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia."

These were three kings following Cyrus, the king that conquered Babylon. It's an amazing fact that Cyrus was specifically called by the Lord to bring down Babylon and begin the work of letting the Jews go back to Jerusalem. The Lord was interacting with these kings as they marched through history in a very special way.

"That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid. Isaiah 44:28

Cyrus, had already been named in the Bible, long before he was born, this truth was part of what gave him the insight and understanding to work in favour of the Jews.

"Thus saith the Lord to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut;" Isaiah 45:1

Sure enough, when Cyrus attacked Babylon, the special protective gates were open!

There was going to be three kings that stood up in Persia after him, and then a fourth that would be far richer. The son of Cyrus, Cambyses, was the first of these three kings and he started a campaign to conquer Egypt once he was king. He got the throne by assassinating his brother so that there was no question about who was going to follow Cyrus.

He murdered his brother and became king. Then he made an attack on Egypt, and was successful. He gathered some of the Egyptian idols, wealth, silver and gold and was on his way back from Egypt. He found out that a man, pretending to be his brother, who he had murdered, had taken the throne. This man was called Smerdis which was the brother's name; but in history he's called false Smerdis. He wasn't the real Smerdis, but he took the throne anyway.

On his way back from Egypt, Cambyses realized that this impostor had taken his throne. Some historians say he committed suicide; some say that he died of an accident.

This false Smerdis was a Mede and wasn't sympathetic to the work of the Jews restoring Jerusalem. He actually issued a decree to stop the work. Seven or eight months later he was dead and the third king came up. Darius, not Darius the Mede, but Darius the Persian. He is again, sympathetic to the need of the Jews to return to Jerusalem. He put forth the second of the three decrees that allow the 2300 day prophecy to begin. It allowed the Jews to have full autonomy in their country.

After him, it says, there would be a fourth king that was far richer. This fourth king, Xerxes, was wealthy. He put together a great army to attack Greece but he failed in his plans.

The verse says he stirs up the realm of Greece and they begin preparation to come later and sweep away the kingdom of the Medes and Persians. There were nine other kings that followed in the history of the Medes and Persians, but only these are mentioned, because they're the points of reference that the prophetic record wants to give us.

The king that followed Xerxes, was the king that gave the third and final decree, Artaxerxes, the son of Xerxes. In the Bible record, these kings have Hebrew names and also Persian names. Cambyses is the Artaxerxes of Ezra 4. Darius, the king that was 3rd in line after Cyrus, is Xerxes. The king that was much richer and stirred up the realm of Greece against the Medes and Persians. He is the Ahasuerus of Esther.

The Bible record shows every one of these kings, except for Smerdis, had a direct connection with the work of bringing the Jews back to Israel. They were being influenced by Gabriel, and other angels, no doubt, to accomplish this work.

We need to understand, here at the end of the world, that no matter what leader and what kingdom is involved, our Lord is fully in charge of the situation. The time of trouble is just before us; the greatest time of trouble there ever will be, and we need to have the trust and confidence of Daniel. Daniel walked into the crisis situation at Belshazzar's feast, when the handwriting was on the wall. Daniel knew that, if not then and there, in a very short period of time, Cyrus and the Medes and Persians were going to conquer Babylon.

He had the faith and character to walk in and tell Belshazzar, 'No, I don't want your gifts that you're giving me, but I'll read this to you', and he explained it to him. This is just what God's people are going to do at the end of the world. In the crisis they are going to understand the truth about the powers that be, and the struggles going on in the world. They will have the same confidence, the same trust that Daniel had, and give the faithful witness and true testimony at that time.

A great Bible truth, shown in verse 2, is that God is directly involved with the leaders of the world.

**"And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will." Daniel 11:3**

This 'mighty king' is Alexander the Great.

**"And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven;**

**and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those.” Daniel 11:4**

Alexander the Great conquered the world and then drank himself to death. His kingdom was broken up. The next verse talks about four winds, and the previous prophecies of Daniel say that his kingdom was divided into the four winds. But at first there were 36 generals fighting to take control of Alexander’s kingdom. Finally it got down to four; Cassander, Lysimachus, Seleucus and Ptolemy.

These four continued to struggle for the dominion of Alexander’s kingdom, until there were only two kingdoms left. Ptolemy, who was in control of the southern area of Egypt. Later, this becomes the kingdom in Daniel 11 that we know as the King of the South.

The other general is Seleucus; his is the kingdom of the north controlling Syria. The heart of Syria, was Babylon. So the rule is established in the history of the struggle between Alexander’s generals as they go throughout time; the King of the North is the power that controls Babylon and the King of the South is the Power that controls Egypt.

We are told the kingdom of Alexander the Great, isn’t going to be left to his family, and sure enough, one of those generals had Alexander’s family executed; so they were out of the story. Then it’s simply a struggle between these different generals until finally it gets down to two of them and verse 5 begins the story of the King of the North and the King of the South.

**“And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion shall be a great dominion.” Daniel 11:5**

The King of the South, Ptolemy, shall be strong and ‘one of his princes’; it’s making a distinction here, the King of the South, Ptolemy, and one of ‘his’ (Alexander’s) princes, Seleucus; his kingdom was larger, stronger, and more powerful than Ptolemy’s, and that’s where the story begins. The King of the North is the stronger, larger kingdom, but they’re struggling with one another.



**“And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king’s daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times.” Daniel 11:6**

“He that begat her”; the margin says “and whom she brought forth”. Where it says ‘he that begat her’, it is really meaning her child. What’s happening here is ‘at the end of years’, after a certain time period with Seleucus and Ptolemy struggling with one another, they decide to form a treaty. So Ptolemy sends his daughter, Bernice, to the King of the North for him to marry her.

But the King of the North is already married, so to do this, he has to put away his wife, Laodice. This was their agreement of peace. But it says, ‘She shall not retain the power of his arm’. ‘She’ here, is Bernice, the King of the South’s daughter. She’s not going to retain the power with Seleucus, the King of the North. After a time, Seleucus decided that he wasn’t happy with Bernice from the South, so he divorced her, and re-married his former wife, Laodice.

Laodice then decided that ‘I can’t have confidence in what this guy is going to do next, so I’m going to kill him.’ So she had him killed. Then she had Bernice and Bernice’s child killed, and turned the kingdom over to her son.

That’s the story here in verse 6, the daughter of the king of the South will not retain the power of arms, she’s going to be set aside, by the King of the North, as a wife. ‘Neither shall he stand’; the King of the North isn’t going to stand, because Laodice, his newly retrieved wife, is going to assassinate him, ‘and she shall be given up’, the daughter of the King of the South shall be given up; she’s going to be executed. ‘And those that brought her’; the attendants that came from Egypt with her, all the people that were brought to support her as the ‘Queen of the North’, they were all executed. And her son, that she had while she was there, he was executed. And ‘he that strengthened her in

these times', the King of the North. Everything about that relationship was assassinated by Laodice, and she placed her son of Seleucus in control.

**"But out of a branch of her roots shall one stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail:" Daniel 11:7**

A branch of 'her roots' meaning the King of the South, where she came from, shall one stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the King of the North, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail.

Sure enough, after the King of the North went back on the agreement that they had made; and Laodice executed Bernice; Bernice's brother, then King of the South because his father had died, was enraged at the treachery of the King of the North. He came out of the same roots as Bernice; they were brother and sister. So 'out of a branch of her roots will one stand up in his estate, in the estate of the King of the South, and shall come with an army and shall enter into the fortress of the King of the North.' And History is very clear that this is exactly what took place.

**"And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, and with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the north." Daniel 11:8**

History shows the Egyptians, after this King of the South had marched on the King of the North, went all the way to Babylon, entered his fortress, and conquered that area, retrieving the booty that had been carried out of Egypt way back when Cambyeses, the second king (verse 2), that stood up after Cyrus, had brought back from his campaign against Egypt. This booty had stayed in the domain of the King of the North. Now this King of the South went and conquered Babylon and brought it back. He was made a hero because he was bringing back all these treasures that had been lost so many years before.

**"So the king of the south shall come into his kingdom,**

**and shall return into his own land.” Daniel 11:9**

Which he did.

**“But his sons shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and one shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress.” Daniel 11:10**

These sons, that shall be stirred up are the sons of the King of the North. They're going to assemble a 'multitude of great forces'. The sons of the king that was conquered and lost the booty that was carried back into Egypt, are stirred up to retaliate against Egypt, the King of the South. 'Sons' is in the plural, but by the end of the verse it is in the singular, 'and one shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress.'

History says there were 2 sons of the King of the North at that time, and one was incompetent. He was the one that began the preparation for war. His generals were so frustrated with his abilities that they poisoned him. Then the second son takes up the task. and builds a mighty army to return back against the King of the South in response to what they have done.

**“And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come forth and fight with him, even with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand. And when he hath taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down many ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened by it.” Daniel 11:11,12**

Now the King of the North brought a great multitude against the King of the South, and the King of the South, angry about the situation, fights against him and prevails against the King of the North. Even though the King of the North had a great army, it's given into the hand of the King of the South. He prevails, and the story of him casting down the 'many ten-thousands', shows how God was still controlling and working with these kings.

This King of the South, that had marched in verses 11,

12, against the King of the North and retaliated, defeated their great multitude. We take up the historian Prudeau's account, in the chapter 'Connections' under the 217 BC time period, at this point:

"Philopater, was a fellow of abandoned lust and dissipation. He was so elated by his victory over Antiochus that he held processions through the provinces." He had conquered a lot of provinces, so as he was coming back to Egypt, he celebrated and had processions through each area. He entered Jerusalem and after a blasphemous act of offering sacrifices to God, he tried to enter the Most Holy Place of the temple, in spite of the protest and entreaties of the Jews in charge.

"He was smitten from God with such a terror and confusion of mind that he was carried out of the place in a manner half dead. On this he departed from Jerusalem, filled with great wrath against the whole nation of the Jews for that which happened to him in that place and venting many threatenings against them for it."

Verse 12 talks about him casting down many ten-thousands and it's describing his retaliation against the Jews for this incident.

"In vengeance for his disgrace at Jerusalem he returned to his country and endeavoured to force the many Jews in Egypt to sacrifice to Egypt's heathen gods and renounce their worship of Jehovah. When 300 Jews adopted the heathen religion, they were excommunicated by the Jewish society. Regarding this as a further insult to himself, Philopater determined to destroy the Jews in his dominion and commanded that as many as could be rounded up, be brought in chains to Alexandria.

"These were placed in a large arena, and it was proposed that on a certain day, a great public spectacle would be made, by turning wild and drunken elephants upon them. The devout Jews earnestly called upon God and when the appointed time came, the drunken and maddened beasts were let loose.

"But they turned their rage upon all those who came to

see the show and destroyed great numbers of them. Besides, several appearances were soon seen in the air, which much frightened the king and all the spectators. All which, manifesting the interposals of Divine power in the protection of those people. Philopater durst not any longer prosecute his rage against them, but ordered them to be all set free and fearing the Divine vengeance upon him in their behalf, he restored them to all their privileges, rescinding and revoking all his decrees, which he had published against them.”

Three years afterwards however, in 213 BC, Philopater, on another pretext slew 40,000 Jews. Thus he cast down ten-thousands.

### **Pagan Rome Starts its First Rise to Power**

**“For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches. And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall.”**  
**Daniel 11:13, 14**

After the King of the South retaliates on the King of the North, he makes his triumphant march back to Egypt, and tries to enter the Most Holy Place, but God prevents it. In time the King of the North returns, putting together a great army. That King of the South, later dies, leaving his son as heir of the throne, but his son is only five years old.

‘In those times’, when the King of the South is only five years old, he is very vulnerable, and the King of the North is ready to retaliate against the King of the South. ‘In those times, there shall many stand up against the King of the South’. The ‘many’ refers at this time to the Macedonian king, Philip of Macedonia. He makes an agreement with the King of the North, saying, ‘let’s go and take the King of the South, and, when we conquer him, I get the geographical area close to me, and you get the area closer to you. They form this alliance. At the same time, men in Egypt, also see the vulnerability of the King of the South,

and plan to do away with him, and usurp the throne of the King of the South.

So 'in those times, there shall many stand up against the king of the south.' The people in Egypt stand up against the five year old child-King of the South; the King of the North stands up against him; Philip of Macedonia in confederacy with the King of the North stands up against him; also the 'robbers of thy people' shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall.

We now look at this phrase; 'they shall fall'. In the history of Philip of Macedonia and his alliance with the King of the North to attack the vulnerable five-year-old King of the South; they ultimately fall. So this phrase could be applied to them. But the main application of this 'shall fall' is that it is a characteristic of Rome. Rome is here introduced for the first time into chapter 11 as the 'robbers of thy people'. A look at the history of Rome shows why the term 'robbers' fits so well.

The Italian peninsula at that time in history was known to be where a band of robbers and thieves hid out. They would strike out from their base in Italy, and not only steal gold and booty, but they were infamous for stealing wives and women. They were known throughout that area as thieves and robbers. They came mainly from Greek heritage; Italy was basically a place for them to hide out.

So when we see the term 'robbers' applied to them, it's very fitting, 'The robbers of thy people'. This is Rome coming into the prophecy. It says that Rome shall exult themselves. One of the characteristics of all these pagan powers in the book of Daniel, is that they exult themselves; but the main power that exults itself is Rome.

Here is a most important phrase about these people; 'The robbers of Thy people shall exult themselves', and they are the ones that 'establish the vision'. This is the main focus in Daniel 11. This vision, whether it's talking about Medes, Persians, Greeks, or whatever; the power that makes this vision stand is Rome. This is the point of reference.

This is the truth in verse 14, the focus of Daniel 10, 11

and 12, is about Rome, these other kingdoms are the history that leads to Rome, and from verse fifteen onward, Rome is going to become King of the North, and it will remain King of the North until it comes to its end, until it falls. That's what verse 14 is saying, and from here onward, Rome is the focus of this prophecy.

There are three different Roman powers in verse 29. We now begin dealing with the history of how Papal Rome came to control the world. The history of Rome from verses 14-29 is the history of Pagan Rome. In verses 29-40 is the history of Papal Rome, the first time around. Then in verse 40 and onward, it shows the third history of Rome, modern Rome; modern Babylon, the Papacy of today.

There is a pattern used in all three of those scenarios. It first describes how Rome comes to control the world, and then it drops back into that same history to describe how Rome dealt with God's people during that time period.

Remember verse 13 says; "For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches."

This describes the time when Egypt's king had died and left the kingdom of Egypt to his five-year-old son and his daughter, Cleopatra. The next verses show Rome coming into the picture. Verse 14 says there would many stand up against the King of the South at this time. Not only did this happen immediately after the king died and left his kingdom to his children, but there was a struggle in Egypt itself, to try to take control. Also Phillip of Macedon and the Assyrian kingdom, the King of the North, decided they would join forces and go and take Egypt and divide up that kingdom among themselves.

Verse 14 follows saying at this time the 'Robbers of thy people' will stand up, and sure enough, in that situation, Rome began to make moves towards being a kingdom in the world. They had already fought some wars in northern Africa, and they accepted the responsibility of being the protectors of these children. They let it be known that if

Syria, the King of the North and Macedonia were going to come after Egypt, they were going to have to deal with Rome as well.

**“So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither shall there be any strength to withstand.” Daniel 11:15**

So the King of the North begins to make his march on the child king of Egypt, and the protectorate of Rome that was managing Egypt during that time. He hired an army, this is the ‘chosen people’ in verse 15. The protectorate of Egypt selected this army. The King of the North came against them and just wiped them out basically. There’s more details to the battle that went on there, but this hired army, ‘mercenaries’ we would call them today, those ‘chosen people’ couldn’t stand, they didn’t have strength to withstand. They came almost all the way into Egypt, but they don’t quite get there.

**“But he that cometh against him shall do according to his own will, and none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed.” Daniel 11:16**

This was Pompey. This verse here is saying that as the King of the North, Assyria decides to make its move on Egypt, even though the Romans had said, “leave Egypt alone”, Rome goes into battle against them and Pompey goes through Assyria and levels it.

We need to look closely at who the King of the North is, and who is the King of the South. Here in the first part of this verse, when Rome overcomes Assyria, Rome becomes the King of the North. The rule is the power that controls the geographical area of Egypt is the King of the South, and the power that controls the geographical area of Babylon is the King of the North.

Babylon was the center of the Assyrian kingdom. When Rome in verse 16 came in and the Assyrians could not stand against him, Rome took control of that area; by the rule established in Daniel 11, Rome became the King of the North.



They swept through Assyria and they followed on and took the 'Glorious Land' of Israel as well. This is talking about the Roman army taking control of the country of Israel.

In 'Daniel and Revelation' pg. 247, Uriah Smith, speaks about responding to a quarrel for power, going on among the Israelites themselves. Pompey came back to Jerusalem to deal with these people that were resisting his power.

"At the end of three months, the breach was made in the walls sufficient for an assault and the place was carried at to point of the sword. In the terrible slaughter that ensued twelve thousand persons were slain. It was an affecting sight, observes the historian, to see the priest engaged at the time in the Divine service with calm hand and steady purpose pursue their accustomed work apparently unconscious of the wild tumult until their own blood was mingled with that of the sacrifices they were offering.

"Having put an end to the war, Pompey demolished the walls of Jerusalem, transferred several cities from the jurisdiction of Judea to that of Syria and imposed tribute on the Jews. For the first time, Jerusalem was by conquest placed in the hands of Rome. That power which was to hold the Glorious Land in its iron grasp until it had utterly consumed it."

The point that has a bearing on the final verses in this chapter, is when Rome conquered the 'Glorious Land' in verse 16, they weren't overthrowing the religion of the Jews, or destroying the temple. They were taking control of the country of Israel, the Glorious Land. We have to remember this, if we're going to correctly divide the Word of God when we get to the end verses.

**"He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him. After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but a prince for his own behalf shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease; without his own reproach he shall cause it to turn upon him. Then he shall turn his face toward**

**the fort of his own land: but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.” Daniel 11:17-19**

What is described here initially, is that Rome at this point determines that it's going to use its strength to conquer the entire kingdom of Alexander the Great.

In other words Rome had already taken the kingdom of the North when Assyria fell, and then it's taken the kingdom of the Glorious Land, and now it decides it's going to take the King of the South and when it does that, it will have taken the whole kingdom of Alexander the Great.

### **3 Areas Conquered**

In Daniel 8:9 it says, 'And out of one of them came forth a little horn.' And this 'Little Horn' has been correctly understood for years as Pagan Rome. 'Which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land.' Rome had to overcome three geographical obstacles, to become the fourth kingdom of Bible prophecy. Daniel 11 is simply building upon that truth.

In verse 16, it takes Assyria, to the east of Rome; and then it takes the Glorious Land, or Pleasant Land in chapter 8. Its next point of attack is the King of the South, which in verse 17 describes when Julius Caesar goes into Egypt.

Pompey had been placed in the protectorship of the children, Cleopatra and Ptolemy, and when Ptolemy had Pompey killed, then Julius Caesar continued his pursuit that he had began after Pompey, right into Egypt. He then takes the position that since Pompey is removed from the protectorate, he's now the protectorate, and he tries to settle some of the dissent in Egypt about whether Ptolemy or Cleopatra is going to rule the kingdom. 'And he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him.'

This is referring to Julius Caesar and Cleopatra. Historians differ in this affair. Some say Cleopatra was Julius Caesar's mistress; others that he married her. Some claim the royalty in Egypt was passed down through the female side of the family, so the reason that Julius Caesar, and later

Mark Anthony married Cleopatra, was because it made them the King of Egypt and that's what they wanted.

With this understanding, that the blood line passed down through the female side in Egypt, then this verse is clear in saying, 'and he shall give him the daughter of women, (Cleopatra) corrupting her.' It could have been Julius Caesar who was initiating this marriage to take control of Egypt, so then he would be the corruptor of her. Most commentators try to turn this around to where Cleopatra corrupted him, and later on corrupted Mark Anthony, but that isn't what the verse says.

The most important theme through these verses is that Rome has come to control the world at this point. The Bible wants to be very clear about this sequence of leadership in Rome; Julius Caesar, then Caesar Augustus then Tiberius Caesar. This sequence of Caesars, so clearly identified in these verses, places Rome as the only possible entity that could fulfill this prophecy. Remember this vision is about Rome, so there's some very clear history shown here.

We see Julius Caesar coming into Egypt, finding all kinds of problems that he has to resolve. After he fought some of the battles there, and seemed to have brought it under control, he turns to the islands in verse 18. That's describing his march through the Mediterranean where he very quickly brought those islands and sea-coasts under the authority of Rome. By verse 19 he returns to Rome, the Hero. Then he is assassinated at the foot of the statue of Pompey.

**"Then shall stand up in his estate (after Julius Caesar is assassinated) a raiser of taxes in the glory of the kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle." Daniel 11:20**

Augustus Caesar is clearly this raiser of taxes. He called for the taxation that brought Joseph and Mary to Bethlehem. This is one of the most easily recognizable events in the Bible. These verses here in Daniel 11 more than anything else are saying that this history can't be mistaken, therefore the kingdom under discussion in these verses, is Rome. We

need to see this to understand the Bible correctly. This is the Pagan Roman Empire.

After Augustus, the raiser of taxes dies in peace, then another arises.

**“And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries. And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflown from before him, and shall be broken; yea, also the prince of the covenant.” Daniel 11:21, 22**

History says that Tiberius Caesar was the son of the wife of Augustus Caesar, but not Augustus' son. She had petitioned Augustus Caesar to proclaim that he would be emperor when Augustus died. He refused, and picked another, but that person died before Augustus. Tiberius' mother then pled with Augustus Caesar, and he, in his old age, agreed to let him take control of the kingdom at his death. And this is how he took the kingdom by flatteries.

But no one in Rome ever had any respect for him, and history clearly shows he definitely was a vile man. He finally died by suffocation with pillows, executed by some of his own men. Verse 22 indicates all his wickedness, using his 'arms', military power, to work his own will, until finally a revolt overthrows him.

Notice here it says; 'Yea, also the Prince of the covenant' would be broken during this period of Rome. Daniel 9:25-27, shows that the Prince of the covenant will be cut off in the midst of the week. The information in these verses clearly identifies this kingdom that will 'establish the vision'; this kingdom that is called the 'robbers of thy people'. The kingdom that will exult themselves and ultimately fall, is Rome.

Verse 23 drops back into the history of Rome, just covered in verses 13-22, to a time when Israel was under constant attack by Syria, and they entered into a league with Rome in order to get some protection. To understand these verses clearly, we need to take them in sections.

**“And after the league made with him he shall work**

**deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people. He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time." Daniel 11:23, 24**

These two verses give the starting place of the league with the Jews that Rome made in 161 BC. It places us back in the history of the previous verses, and it begins to describe the characteristics of Rome. We saw earlier in the book of Daniel, that this fourth kingdom was to be different.

One of the differences is that Babylon, Medo-Persia, and Greece conquered through their military might. Rome conquered through its military might as well, but also through 'politics'. They formed 'leagues'; and here in verse 23 it starts with the league they formed with the Jews.

They made agreements with countries to be their protector, like they did in Egypt earlier by protecting the young king. They formed a league with Greece to protect Greece from the Macedonians and the Assyrians. This was one of the 'differences' of this fourth kingdom, thus it became 'strong with a small people'. They originated the concept of the 'protection racket'.

They began as a small people, but if you're going to conquer a country by signing a peace treaty with it, which ultimately brings that country under your control, you don't need a large army, you just need a diplomatic core. This is one of the characteristics of the fourth kingdom that continues in its second phase.

Verse 24 it carries on this description, 'he'll enter peaceably upon the fattest places of the province'. For example, when it took control of Greece, it was through peaceable measures and 'he'll do what his fathers have not done or his father's fathers'. This is saying, Alexander the Great, or the Medes and the Persians or Babylon, being the 'fathers, the grandfathers and the great grandfathers', never conquered this way through politics, they conquered through warfare.

‘He shall scatter among them the prey and the spoil and riches’. This was one of the characteristics of Rome; when they conquered a place, the booty was divided between the soldiers of the army, also some of the countries that agreed to form treaties with them, were also, at first given some of the riches. Later on, they came under the slavery-type dominance of Rome. Rome’s technique was to share the wealth as they took the wealth as they rose to conquer the world.

### **31 BC - 330 AD Rome rules from Rome**

The last phrases of verse 23 say, Rome shall ‘forecast his devices against the stronghold’. This is better understood as Rome will forecast his devices ‘from’ his stronghold. This seems the clearest understanding of this verse. The stronghold, that Rome forecast his devices from, was the city of Rome, ‘even for a time’. It is saying that Rome would prosecute taking control of the world, from the city of Rome for 360 years.

From the starting point of 31 BC, we add a ‘time’ (360 years) and this time prophecy comes to a conclusion in 330 AD. Then, the capitol of the Roman Empire was moved from the city of Rome to the city of Constantinople. In the beginning of the Roman Empire, they were going to forecast their devices from the city of Rome for 360 years and when the 360 years was up, this stronghold of Rome was no longer going to be a stronghold.

**“And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army; and the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him.” Daniel 11:25**

This describes the final conquest of Egypt, which includes the battle of Actium in 31 BC. The King of the South at this time, isn’t one of the line of Ptolemy, it’s Mark Anthony, who joined with Lepidus and Caesar to form a ‘triumvirate’, a three-party rule in Rome. One of their purposes was to avenge the assassination of Julius Caesar, and they all three began to go after things in their own ways.

Ultimately, Mark Anthony goes to Egypt and depending on which historical testimony you want to believe, he either falls in love with Cleopatra in such a way that he can't control himself; or if you take the reasoning set forth by some, that the monarchy in Egypt was passed down through the female side; he may have realized, 'Well, if I marry Cleopatra, then I become the king of Egypt.' There's a logic to that, which seems to make sense. At this point in verse 25, the King of the South that the king is going to come against is Mark Anthony, and verses 26-27 build upon this story.

**"Yea, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow: and many shall fall down slain. And both these kings' hearts shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end shall be at the time appointed."**  
**Daniel 11:26, 27**

Here we see the Triumvirate, the 3 man rule in Rome, was set up after Julius Caesar. Lepidus, Augustus Caesar and Mark Anthony, had come together to accomplish their task of controlling the world, and working revenge against Julius Caesar's enemies. They sat at the same table and talked about doing mischief together, but they were lying to one another, and their lies weren't going to prosper.

Finally when Caesar comes into Egypt to deal with Mark Anthony, he is destroyed. When he is destroyed, he has his army in place to battle against another Roman army. Both are Roman armies, but he also has the Egyptian army of Cleopatra with him. As they see the folly of fighting with Mark Anthony, one by one the Egyptian army and his army switches over to the other Roman army. The Egyptian army fled and Mark Anthony is totally wiped out. This is what's being described in verse 25; he's not able to stand.

When Caesar came back to Rome with all the booty from Egypt and all the human trophies, he would have had Cleopatra, but she committed suicide and so she isn't carried back into Rome.

Verse 26 says 'they that feed of the portion of his meat

shall destroy him'. This is talking about how Mark Anthony's army turned on him. The troops he was counting on to come to his aid, when they saw the position he was in, switched over to Rome. That's what's being discussed in these verses.

These verses are significant because this battle, where the King of the South, Mark Anthony, is finally dealt with, is the Battle of Actium 31 BC, the starting point of the 'time' of verse 24, (1 Prophetic year = 360 literal years) that Rome would rule the world from the city of Rome. Verse 27 is a concluding thought to this time prophecy; 'yet the end shall be at the time appointed'.

So, what we see about Rome is; it's going to be different from other world-powers; it's going to use politics as well as military might; it's going to rule the world for a 'time' from the stronghold of Rome. The starting point for this power ruling the world is the battle where Mark Anthony and his supporters are overthrown and the 'end will be at the time appointed'.

**"Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and his heart shall be against the holy covenant; and he shall do exploits, and return to his own land." Daniel 11:28**

Caesar returns to Rome after this battle of Actium. He has all the booty that he has taken from Egypt and he parades it through the streets of Rome. Historians testify this is just what he did.

There are two 'returnings' in this verse. The first 'returning', is when he returns from conquering the King of the South, and being established as the king of the earth, the fourth kingdom of Bible prophecy, in the year 31 BC.

Then it says, 'his heart shall be against the holy covenant and he shall do exploits and return to his own land'. This 'returning' is from the next conquest, that military campaign of Rome going down to Judah, and ultimately destroying Jerusalem and the temple in AD 70. This is why his heart is against the holy covenant, in the sense that he's going to destroy the temple, Jerusalem and the people that once had been God's people.



**“At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.”  
Daniel 11:29**

Now the ‘time appointed’ jumps forward in history. Verse 27 says ‘the end shall be at the time appointed’, and that Rome would forecast its power from the stronghold of the city of Rome for 360 years. The next verses are describing the starting point, 31 BC. Verse 27 is letting us know that the end of this time period of verse 24, the 360 years, will be at the ‘time appointed’. Verse 29 carries this thought forward; ‘at the time appointed’, in the year 330 AD, ‘he shall return and come towards the south, but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.’

The ‘time appointed’, the end of the 360 years in 330 AD, when the capitol of the Roman empire was moved from the city of Rome to Constantinople by Constantine, was the end of the supremacy of Rome. The 360 years of prophetic time had come to its close, and from that point on the ability of Rome to control the world at will through its military might and its political prowess, ceased.

In 330 AD, when he moved the capitol, then all the problems begin for Rome. It was immediately divided into east and west and the western empire immediately comes under attack from barbarians out of the north.

The islands of the Mediterranean that Rome had formerly controlled, now become launching points for some of the powers designed by God to bring Rome down, and contribute to the environment needed for Rome to break up into the ten horns and the three horns to be removed as in Daniel 7.

Notice verse 29 says ‘At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.’ The ‘former or later’ means when Rome attempts to defend itself and maintain its authority from Constantinople, the new capitol of the kingdom, he won’t have the ability to be successful in his military campaigns from that point on. It won’t be as the former; like when he went into Egypt and dealt with Mark Anthony and

had such great success, nor will it be as the latter; when he went into Judea and destroyed the temple in AD 70 and wiped out Israel. He had success then, but in 330 from this point on, his military success wasn't going to be the same.

**“For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant: so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant.” Daniel 11:30**

### **The First Sunday Laws**

The ‘ships of Chittim’ of verse 30 are the Vandals. Their continued military success was weakening Rome, and as the emperor of Eastern Rome went out to do battle against them, he was defeated, or ‘grieved’.

In an attempt to oppose the so-called Arian beliefs of the three horns of the Heruli, Goths, and Vandals, Emperor Justinian appointed the bishop of Rome as the head of the Christian church and the corrector of heretics. By doing so he had ‘indignation against the holy covenant’, and had ‘intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant’ and the transition of Roman power from pagan to papal was under way.

Verse 29 described the closing scenes of pagan Rome’s authority, we see Constantine moving the capital away from Rome at the ‘time appointed’. In verse 30 we see his ‘indignation against the holy covenant’ as he introduces the first Sunday laws.

We are told that when the United States passes a national Sunday law, national apostasy will be followed by national ruin. The same principles apply throughout history. After Constantine issues his Sunday laws, the Roman Empire begins to crumble. In former years when Rome warred against their enemies they found victory, but no longer.

### **Papal Rome’s Rise to Power:**

**“And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pol-**

**lute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily {sacrifice}, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate.” Daniel 11:31**

This concise history shows us the method by which Papal Rome rose to world dominance, replacing Pagan Rome; ‘Arms shall stand on his part’. This happened in the year 496 AD, when Clovis, king of France, pledged himself to fight for the Pope, and the nations of Europe soon followed his example, except for the Huruli, the Vandals and the Ostrogoths, which were finally defeated and wiped out. Notice that when Pagan Rome rose to world dominion, it had to conquer 3 geographical areas; when Papal Rome rose, it had to conquer 3 nations.

**“And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits. And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days.” Daniel 11:32, 33**

This is describing the 1260 years of Papal rule from 538 AD to 1798. Here we are shown the ‘church in the wilderness’, the true believers who had to flee to the mountains in those days. It says in verse 32 that they ‘know their God’. What a wonderful tribute to those faithful ones!

Our verse tells us how those faithful ones worked hard to teach others and keep the Word of God alive during those terrible years. It also tells of the many ways that wicked men, under Satan’s control, took the lives of those dear, faithful believers.

Daniel 7:25 says, ‘they (the faithful) would be given into his hands’ for these years. Have you ever wondered why God allowed this cruel power to do all this in the name of religion? Well, God has a purpose; He has allowed Satan to show what his kind of government is like. All the angels that remained in heaven and the other worlds that did not sin, can see just what Satan’s rule brings. He can’t fool them any more.

But why is Satan still fooling people on earth? It is

taking a longer time for people on earth to learn the lesson, because, sadly, most of them, still choose to believe Satan's lies and enjoy his so-called pleasures. God's true people will know that Satan is a liar and a murderer. I hope it can be said of each one of us that 'we know our God'.

**"Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries. And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed." Daniel 11: 34, 35**

These verses deserve special consideration, because they show that although God allowed Satan to have his own way in the world for a while; it was for only a certain time period, the 1260 years. The 'time of the end' that this verse talks about, is the end of that time prophecy of the 1260 years.

The warning is seen here that some of the faithful would be fooled by people who pretended to be their friends and flattered them, and were tricked and killed. This happened to the Waldenses; and in France at the time of the St. Bartholomew's massacre. It also happened in Ireland near that same time. When Rome seems friendly; watch out!

The angel tells about some help that God would send to His dear ones. This 'little help' was the reformation, which began hundreds of years before the end of the 1260 years. It slowed down the persecution a bit at least.

Another thing that happened in the middle ages and 'helped', was that the forces of Islam, the Mohammedans, began to attack the areas occupied by Papal Rome, and often forces assembled to attack the faithful true believers had to be called back to defend against the 'Saracens' and the 'Turks'.

Jesus said in Matthew 24:22 "except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened." Again, it was the reformation that 'shortened those days'.

When sad, bad days come, we can know our Heavenly Father is in charge and will 'shorten the days' in love.

**“And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvelous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all.” Daniel 11:36, 37**

Some think that this could not still refer to Papal Rome, because they *claim* to honor God. But, we also know that Rome claims to be able to change God’s very Law, which even God says He won’t do! (Matthew 5:18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.)

Is it not ‘magnifying himself above every god’ to tell the people to ignore God’s Holy Word and obey him instead? Calling himself the one who speaks for God on this earth, this power certainly speaks ‘against the God of gods’.

This verse also mentions ‘the Desire of women’ which likely refers to Christ, as faithful women down through history until the birth of Jesus, longed to be the one chosen to be the mother of the Messiah. The Papacy shows Jesus nearly always either as a wafer in a box, or in a monstrance; a baby in Mary’s arms; or hanging dead on a cross.

So this power doesn’t regard the ‘God of his fathers’, or Jesus, or any God, because he sets himself above all Divine authority.

He shall continue in this attitude until the ‘indignation be accomplished’. What is this indignation? We learned about this when we looked at Daniel 8:13, which references the ‘last Indignation’. Here we see the first Indignation which ended in 1798. These verses refer to the two periods of 2520 years, or the ‘Seven Times’ that came upon Israel from breaking the covenant. (See Leviticus 26:14-39)

The first Indignation, or Seven Times on the Northern Kingdom began in 723 BC and ended in 1798. The Second, or Last Indignation on the Southern Kingdom, or Judah, began in 677 BC and ended in 1844.

So this power continued to exult and magnify himself

and do according to his own will until the end of the 1260 years and the first Indignation, both of which ended in 1798.

**“But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things. Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.” Daniel 11:38, 39.**

To understand this verse we need to look at the Hebrew words. ‘God of forces’ in this verse can also mean ‘goddess of fortresses.’ Here you see a picture of the goddess Diana that Paul talks about; you will see that she has a castle on her head. Yes, she wears a tower for a hat. She was called Goddess of Fortresses. This went back in time to the first ‘goddess’ Semeramis, the wife of Nimrod, who first built a city with a wall around it to protect it. The goddess Cybel is also depicted this way.

It was the city of Ephesus that was especially attached to worshipping Diana. And it was at the council of Ephesus that the Roman church decided to declare Mary the ‘Mother of God’ and ‘Queen of Heaven’. The early Roman church needed to bring in a Mother and Child symbol into the church as the sun-worshippers loved their ‘goddess of fortresses’ and her child, the sun-god, Apollo. So they changed the name to Mary, mother of Jesus. They created a new god, ‘whom his fathers knew not’, and honored her with riches and so on.

Remember, prophecy is given to show us that God loves



His people, and we can have faith in Him. What He said would happen, has happened, exactly.

### **Rome starts its 3rd & Final Rise to Power**

#### **The 'Deadly Wound' Healed**

**“And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over.” Daniel 11:40**

Now when Daniel says ‘time of the end’, he means the end of a time prophecy. What time prophecy tells us about Papal Rome and what it will do? Well, it is the 1260 year time prophecy, ending in 1798.

If what we said about the ‘king of the north’ being Papal Rome is true, we should see something happen in 1798, somebody should ‘push at him’. This word translated ‘push’ means to wage war against, like we see the Ram in chapter 8, ‘Pushing westward, and northward, and southward’. This meant he was attacking and making war against those areas. We can know that the power that pushed, is the power the Bible calls ‘King of the South’. Atheism, the attitude expressed by Pharaoh, king of Egypt who said: “Who is the Lord, that I should obey his voice to let Israel go? I know not the Lord, neither will I let Israel go.” Exodus 5:2

Did it happen? Yes; France, after declaring there was no God, (the word for this is Atheism) sent a general and captured the pope; taking away all his power to rule as a king. (See Revelation 11)

The next question is when did Papal Rome strike back against ‘atheism’? Well, we have a long period of time that passes between the King of the South pushing, and the King of the North coming like a whirlwind. But down through the years they have been conflicting with each other.

The first event happened in 1798; the next part happened in 1989 when the Pope with the help of USA brought about the fall of the ‘Atheist’ power, the USSR.

Just like in 496 when Clovis King of France, pledged

himself to help the Papacy, and the prophecy says, 'Arms shall stand on his part', so in 1982, 'arms' chose to stand on the part of the rising King of the North power, the Papacy; when secret agreements were made between the Pope and the USA president.

"With chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over." 'Chariots and horsemen' mean military strength; 'ships' refers to economic sanctions. This is just exactly what was used to bring USSR down. He entered into the 'countries', plural, the USSR was made up of several countries, not just one, and indeed, the joint power of the Vatican and the USA certainly did 'overflow and pass over'.

And just as when first Pagan and later Papal Rome came to rule the world and had to conquer 3 areas; so as the King of the North begins his last rise to power, he has 3 areas to overthrow also. And the first one is already conquered.

What was it? It was the bastion of Atheism, the 'wall' between communism and the west, the geographical area of USSR. It 'fell' in 1989.

What are the other 2 areas that have to be overcome before the deadly wounded beast again rules the world? They are the 'wall' between Church and State in the USA; the Constitution must be overthrown, then will fall the geographical area of USA; and the third is the 'wall' of national sovereignty among nations, the geographical area of the United Nations of the world.

Have you noticed the pressure to put forward religious laws and repudiate the Constitution lately? Have you noticed the move to do away with separate nations and have a One World Government and a World Court? These walls are tottering to ruin. What happens when they fall?

A law will be passed to force all to keep holy the Sunday of Rome, and desecrate the Bible Seventh Day Sabbath. First the law will be passed in the USA. Then it will force the world to follow and do the same thing. Does the United States now have power to force nations to do what she wants? Oh yes, indeed it has.



In 2001 another event happened to shed light on end time prophecy; in the destruction of the twin towers attributed to radical forces of Islam, we see the 3<sup>rd</sup> Woe of Revelation 11:14 starting to bring perplexity to the nations, especially USA. This will lead towards a confederacy of powers to deal with Islam, and will help bring in the Sunday Law. We will look at this more deeply in the Revelation.

What happens then? It quickly leads to the close of human probation, this is a very important fact. One of those walls is already down and the other two are crumbling fast; are you ready? Are you sure?

**“He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many {countries} shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.” Daniel 11:41**

It is important to realize what is meant here by the Glorious Land; it is not literal Israel, as these are end-time prophecies and apply to ‘spiritual’ Israel; (before the cross prophecy is local and literal in application; after the cross prophecy is world-wide and spiritual in application) and it is not the same as the Glorious Holy Mountain which represents God’s truth and His true and faithful ones.

The Lord provided a ‘goodly’ or ‘glorious’ land for ancient Israel, and He provided a ‘goodly’ or ‘glorious’ land for modern Israel. The purpose for both was the same. It was an asylum for His people, and a depository for His pure truth.

**glorious-6643: in the sense of prominence; splendor (as conspicuous), beautiful, goodly. Strong’s.**

The Lord has done more for the United States than for any other country upon which the sun shines. Here He provided an asylum for His people, where they could worship Him according to the dictates of conscience. Here Christianity has progressed in its purity. The life-giving doctrine of the one Mediator between God and man has been freely taught. God designed that this country should ever remain free for all people to worship Him in accordance with the dictates of conscience. He designed that its civil institu-

tions, in their expansive productions, should represent the freedom of gospel privileges.

‘Glorious Country’ in this prophecy points us to the nation of the United States. When a national Sunday law is passed in United States, this country will symbolically have fallen to Papal Rome. It will also, symbolically march, or follow, in the steps of Rome. “Can two walk together, except they be agreed?” Amos 3:3. (See Revelation 13)

### **Those Who Join Hands**

In this verse the word ‘countries’ is supplied. Many ‘countries’ will not be overthrown at the time of the national Sunday law, just many people. The previous verse refers to many ‘countries’, as the Soviet Union was made up of several countries, which became prey for Rome. The next verse correctly speaks of ‘countries’, as it describes the whole world coming under the dominion of Rome. However, this verse is dealing only with the national Sunday law in the United States, and at this point, only many people will be overthrown, not many countries. Who are the people that will be overthrown?

They are those who have professed to believe in the messages of the 3 angels of Revelation 14, but they have been influenced by the world. Now they give up the faith and follow with those making void the law of God. We see many overthrown, but we see some that escape.

“Servants of God, endowed with power from on high, with their faces lighted up, and shining with holy consecration, went forth fulfilling their work, and proclaiming the message from heaven. Souls that were scattered all through the religious bodies answered to the call, and the precious were hurried out of the doomed churches, as Lot was hurried out of Sodom before her destruction.” Spiritual Gifts, 1; p. 196.

Ammon, Moab, and Edom are used to symbolize those who did not know about God’s true message before, but they respond to the loud-cry message and stand for the truth, refusing to obey man-made laws that conflict with God’s Ten Commandments. Moab, Ammon, and Edom were close relatives of ancient Israel.

It is interesting to note that the word 'escape' in this verse is different than the word translated 'escape' in the very next verse. The people who escape this 'national Sunday law' escape by 'slipperiness', and the verse says, escape out of his hand. The definition of this word brings to mind the type of slipperiness when one cannot hold onto a bar of soap in a tub of water. It slips right out of one's hand.

**"He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape." Daniel 11:42**

Here we see it telling us that Egypt is not going to escape. Egypt is used in prophecy to mean 2 things: the secular world at large and atheism in particular. So he controls the world, not just the churches. There are many who say, "Well, I am not involved with all this religious stuff, so it won't affect me." We are assured here that he is going to control all the countries of the world, not just religious people, but all.

**"But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps." Daniel 11:43**

This verse is full of symbolic meaning; 'power over the treasures'; this shows the despotic power will control the financial world; economic sanctions and control on a level never before possible!

'Libyans and Ethiopians' likewise have symbolic meaning; Libya was very poor in Bible times and Ethiopia was very rich. So here it is saying that both the rich and the poor of the earth are going to be in step with him. They are all going to go along with him.

**"But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many." Daniel 11:44**

The message that brings God's Seal to the faithful is the message from the east. The righteous man from the east and north is Christ. The message of Christ that comes from the east and north is the good tidings of the "Lord our Righteousness," which is, of course, the three angels' messages. (See Revelation 14)

It is the message by which, first the church, and then the world, will be tested. Moreover, it is this message that will enrage the King of the North, whom we have seen, in the end time events represents modern Papal Rome.

Once again, the final scenes will be rapid ones. The beginning of the Latter Rain will occur just before the time of the national Sunday law in the United States, but it will continue to accelerate and to grow until the close of human probation. The preceding verses illustrate the final steps of the Papacy; they have not focused specifically on what God's people are doing while the pope is taking control of the world, but verse 44 does.

The tidings which come from the North and East are the glad tidings of Christ's righteousness that are swelling into a Loud Cry, and giving the world its final message of warning to obey God and keep His Commandments including the fourth, in the power of Jesus. This message will go forth as the resurrected papal power takes control of the world. As he does so, he will begin to deal with the troublers in his midst, eventually leading to a worldwide death decree that all who refuse obedience to the man-made laws are to be put to death; to utterly make away many.

**“And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.” Daniel 11:45**

We want to take a close look at this final verse of chapter 11 and see the picture-story God has placed there for us. After the time of the cross, the prophecies have a spiritual meaning and apply world-wide rather than to the literal nation of Israel.

First we want to notice a very subtle symbol here; it says ‘the tabernacles of his palace’. Now a tabernacle is primarily a religious symbol; a church. But a ‘palace’ refers to a king; a state power. So here we see an indication of church and state power combined.

We see the King of the North taking a stand here. The words ‘plant the tabernacles of his palace’, in the Hebrew can mean that he will pitch his war tents. He is going to

take a stand; and where is he standing?

Now people get all confused when they keep looking to the literal land of Israel for something to fulfill these words, when it has a spiritual and a world-wide meaning. The King of the North is spiritual Babylon; who's that? It is Rome and all the churches and world powers who join with her.

What are the 'seas'? Seas represent people, nations and so on. (Revelation 17:15) What does the 'Holy Mountain' mean? It means the true people of God. The ones that really believe the Truth and obediently live by every word out of the mouth of God.

Truth as it is in Jesus, is like a Mighty Mountain. You may not like it, and you may try to get rid of it. You may ignore it or fight against it in every way, but it just stands there immovable. You will only wear yourself out and smash yourself to pieces, if you keep attacking it.

There is an interesting text in Luke 20:18 "Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder." Jesus is here explaining something very important to our salvation. He talks about 'falling on a Rock'. Who is that Rock? It is Jesus and His Word. Jesus identifies Himself with His Word, so much that he calls Himself 'the Word'.

So what does it mean to 'fall and be broken'? It means that we come to Jesus through His Word, and when we really get a glimpse of Him, we see our own wretchedness. We repent fully; we die to self; and this is falling on the Rock and being broken. But Jesus lifts us up and gives us a new life in Him. We are born again with Christ living in us His obedient, victorious life.

But the verse says that some don't fall on the Rock, and on these the Rock will fall, grinding them to powder. These are the ones who reject and refuse every effort God makes to get them to surrender and cooperate with Him in their salvation.

The King of the North in this prophecy has done this, and here he stands, defying the Holy Mountain, and the Rock; and it is about to fall on him. None shall help him;

no one *can* help him. He has chosen his own wicked ways until even God Himself has no more that can be tried. Finally the Rock falls.

In verse 44, it talks about ‘tidings’ that make this power angry. This is a message that comes from the people of God to the nations of earth. It warns against what this power is trying to do, and tells people to come out of her. And it also tells that Jesus is about to return.

Hebrew scholars say the verse should read ‘between the seas *and* the glorious holy mountain’. So here sits this wicked power, between the nations of earth and God’s holy people, trying to stop the message of God’s Holy Truth from reaching earth’s millions.

But he comes to his end; glorious promise!

In the 1260 year prophecy, God’s people were ‘given into his (Rome’s) hand’. In the final time of trouble they will not be; instead the power comes to its end, as it tries again to wipe out God’s faithful children.

## DANIEL 12

# Michael Stands Up!

**“And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.” Daniel 12:1**

Daniel 10, 11 and 12 are really one vision. Chapter 12 just continues the angel’s words explaining to Daniel the meaning of the visions he had seen earlier. People get mixed up in their understanding when they don’t realize this fact.

Michael stands up! Who is Michael? We know it is our mighty Saviour, Jesus. This is the name always used for Him when He wars against Satan. He stands up for His people.

There is another place where we see Jesus stand up; it is when Stephen was stoned. (Acts 7) He saw Jesus standing by the Father's throne. He wasn't taking this sitting down!

In AD 34, probation ended for the Jews as a nation. (They can still be saved as individuals, of course.) When He stands up this time, probation will close for the world. Everyone will have decided on the issues and will either belong totally to God, keeping all His commandments, or be in total rebellion against Him, following tradition and man's authority. (Matthew 15:9 "But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.")

I want to be among that number who shall have their names written in the Book, who shall be delivered. I want the overcomer's reward. The masterly temptations of Satan will overpower many who now profess to believe the truth. Their unworthy course of action, their denial of Christ, will make it necessary for God to blot their names from the Book of Life. But may it not be so with us.

In the time of trouble just before the coming of Christ, the righteous will be preserved through the ministration of heavenly angels; but there will be no security for the transgressor of God's law. Angels cannot then protect those who are disregarding one of God's Commandments. Jesus will be with His dear children who trust in Him, and Satan cannot overcome them.

Why is this coming Time of Trouble more terrible than any that has gone before? There have been many times of trouble and terrible happenings and persecution, what makes this so dreadful?

Always before God's Grace, the mercy of God, was still mixed with everything that happened in history, Because Jesus was still ministering His blood in behalf of sinful mankind. We don't know how much we owe to this merciful Grace; without it life would long ago have been extinguished from this planet, by the insane destruction caused by Satan and his nasty demons and the people who have his character. In Revelation 7:1 this mercy is pictured as four mighty angels, holding back the winds of destruction.

After Jesus leaves the sanctuary in heaven and no longer intercedes for sinners, there will be a time when there is no more grace available to the lost. Satan will have complete control over them. This is when probation has ended for this world. (See Revelation 22)

**“And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.” Daniel 12:2, 3**

Just before the actual coming of Jesus in the clouds of heaven, there will be a special resurrection. The people of God who die in the final persecution of the Sunday Law, just before the close of probation, and those who have believed the three angel’s messages, will be raised to see Him come.

But also the ones who crucified Jesus, and those who have been the worst persecutors of God’s children through the ages, will be raised to watch in horror as Jesus returns, not now as a humble man, but as King of kings.

Remember how Jesus warned the high priest about that? Matthew 26:64 “Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.”

Imagine how terrible will be this sight to those wicked ones! But think how wonderful it will be for God’s dear children as they see Him coming, and know that now they are forever free from those who want to force them to disobey their dear heavenly Father. Those wicked people will die three times; the earthly death; then when they see Him come they will die of fright; and finally in the lake of fire they will die forever.

**“But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.” Daniel 12:4**

The angel told Daniel that this part of his book was not going to be understood until the end of those great time prophecies written in the book. Then ‘knowledge would



be increased'. This knowledge doesn't just mean worldly knowledge; it means understanding the book of Daniel. The Syrian Peshitta has this verse: "But you, O Daniel, seal these words and be silent, and seal this book even to the time of the end; many shall want to know the end, and knowledge shall be increased."

As the time prophecies were nearing their end, God's Holy Spirit drew attention to them, and helped people to understand what they meant. 'Running to and fro' does not just mean people traveling around a lot, it means to study the scriptures, 'running here and there' in the Bible and putting texts together, to understand the great final message of the Book.

### TIME PROPHECIES END

As the 1260 year prophecy, the 2520 year prophecy, and the 2300 year prophecy neared their end, people all over the world began to study the book of Daniel and learn wonderful truths out of it. This prophecy was perfectly fulfilled.

The prophecies of Daniel and Revelation as well as the other prophets in the Bible, have special meaning for us now in the end times. God wants us to study and understand His messages to us.

**"Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river. And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, How long shall it be to the end of these wonders?" Daniel 12:5, 6**

No less a person than the Son of God appeared to Daniel. This description is similar to that given by John when Christ was revealed to him upon the Isle of Patmos. Our Lord now comes with another heavenly messenger to teach Daniel what would take place in the latter days. This knowledge was given to Daniel and recorded by Inspiration for us, upon whom the ends of the world are come.

**"And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when**

**he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.” Daniel 12:7**

The ‘Man in linen’ is Jesus our High Priest. The heavenly beings asked him how long the wicked powers would persecute God’s true people. He answers with another prophecy of the 1260 years, which ended in 1798.

You see, this power, seeking now to gain control of the whole world, has already been rejected by God. They have had their time and did wickedly. It will seem like it is going to succeed again, but just when it takes control and seeks to blot out God’s people, it will quickly come to its end. The beast and his buddies may roar and pass laws to force God’s people to break God’s commandments, but they will not do it; Jesus will give them power to stand true for Him.

**“And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.” Daniel 12:8-10**

The wicked have chosen Satan as their leader. Under his control, the wonderful faculties of the mind are used to construct agencies of destruction. God has given the human mind great power; power to show that the Creator has endowed man with ability to do a great work against the enemy of all righteousness, power to show what victories may be gained in the conflict against evil. But when those to whom God has entrusted capabilities give themselves into the hands of the enemy, they become a power to destroy. When men do not make God first and last and best in everything, when they do not give themselves to Him for the carrying out of His purposes, Satan comes in, and uses in his service the minds that, given to God, could achieve great good. Under his direction, they do an evil work with great and masterly power.

**“And from the time that the daily (sacrifice) shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set**

**up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days. Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days. But go thou thy way till the end be: for thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.” Daniel 12:11-13**

Here we see 2 more time prophecies; the first is 1290 day/years: It is from the time when the ‘daily’ is taken away, this ‘daily’ or ‘continual’ desolating power is paganism. The word ‘sacrifice’ doesn’t belong there and is not in the Hebrew text. The ‘abomination of desolation’ power that would begin then to be set up, is Papal Rome.

It meant when Pagan Rome lost its power, and Papal Rome began to be set up, the prophecy was to begin. This happened in 508 AD. 1290 years from that point comes again to 1798.

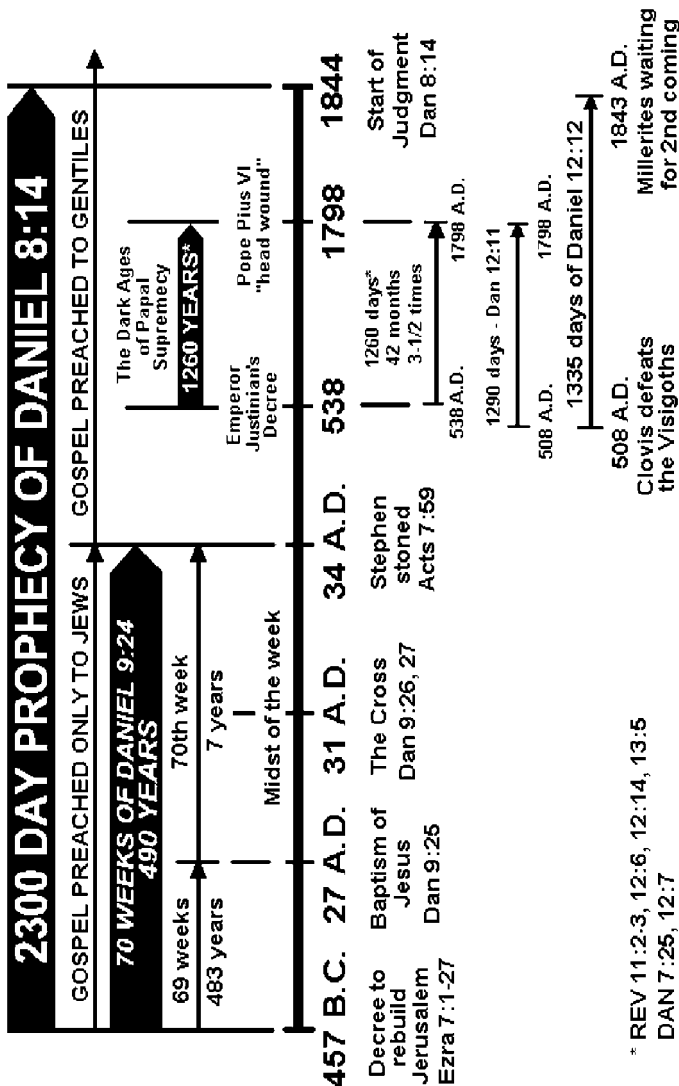
Clovis, king of the Franks, dedicated his sword and his throne to the Papacy in AD 496, and then began the war against the three horns; the Ostrogoths, Vandals, and Heruli. In 538 the last of them was driven from Rome, and the Papal horn was ruling the world.

Then we see 1335 years which starts at the same place; 508 AD, and comes to 1843. Jesus says there is a blessing on that year. What happened in 1843? Well the message of the time prophecies of Daniel were preached with great power. We call it the ‘Midnight Cry’ message.

Remember the parable Jesus told about the Ten Virgins? There was a time when the cry went forth at midnight, “Behold the Bridegroom Cometh! Go ye out to meet Him!” In 1843, which extends to part of 1844, there were a people giving this message; they were looking for the coming of the Bridegroom, Jesus; and they had prepared their hearts to meet Him. This is why it was a blessed year!

You can learn more about it in other studies in this book.

Daniel ‘stands in his lot’; this means that at those times, and in our day also, the prophecies of the book of Daniel would be understood, and do a great work in the earth. This happened in 1843. But it is also happening today. The final message to the world will have its great power from



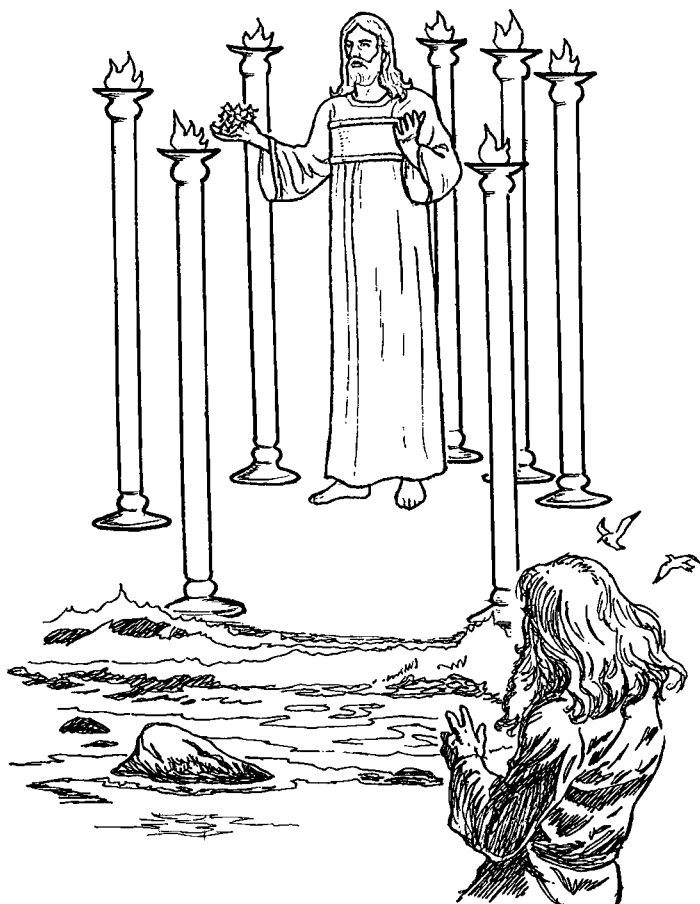
showing how the time prophecies of Daniel and Revelation have been fulfilled.

Daniel and Revelation actually form one book given by Jesus. He gave the first part to Daniel and the second part to John on Patmos. May God bless you as you learn about the wonderful scenes in the Revelation.



**“Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.” Luke 12:32**

# The Book of Revelation



**REVELATION 1****John on Patmos**

**“The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John: Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw.” Revelation 1:1, 2**

The word ‘Revelation’ means something revealed or shown to us. Yet many people claim this book can’t be understood. This is not true at all.

Webster’s Dictionary makes it clear: REVELA’TION, n. [L. revelatus, revelo. See Reveal.] 1. The act of disclosing or discovering to others what was before unknown to them; appropriately, the disclosure or communication of truth to men by God himself, or by his authorized agents, the prophets and apostles.

The first verse shows us that it is Jesus who sent this message to us with the help of the angels, and John was the one who wrote it down for us. It also tells us that the things were to happen soon. We know that the messages in Revelation began to happen even while John was still alive.

**Book of Blessings**

There is another unique thing about this book; it has a special blessing in it. In fact it has three blessings. No other book has these blessings. However we also know that both Daniel and Revelation go together as one book and help explain each other.

**“Blessed is he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein: for the time is at hand.” Revelation 1:3**

Here are three blessings; first, for those who read; but some refuse to read it; they won’t have a blessing. Second, for those who hear the words of the prophecy; but some will not listen to it; they will have no blessing. Third, for those who will keep the things written in this book; but many will not keep them; they will have no blessing.

I want those blessings, don't you? We will read the book, listen to it, and with the power of Jesus keep what we learn here. We won't be like those people who refuse and lose out on those blessings.

**"John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne; And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood, And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen." Revelation 1:4-6**

Look closely at verses 5 and 6 and see the wonderful words written there; "Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood." Jesus loves me; This I know; For the Bible tells me so.

"And hath made us kings and priests unto God"; we are all to be kings and priests; children of the heavenly King, helping others to learn about Jesus.

### **Promise of Jesus' Return**

**"Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen." Revelation 1:7**

This is another place where Jesus is promising to come back to take His children home. "Lift up the trumpet and loud let it ring; Jesus is coming again."

But here we also learn of groups that see Jesus coming and are not happy at all. It says they will wail; that means they will scream and cry. It says first those that pierced Him. The wicked men who tortured and killed Jesus will be raised from their graves to see Him come. How will they feel when they see the marks of what they did, on the great King of the universe?

The other group is those who have loved worldly things and have not given their hearts to Jesus, and are full of sin and selfishness. At this time they have been planning to kill



all of God's people who would not disobey Jesus and break God's Law. But Jesus will put an end to their cruel plans.

**"I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty." Revelation 1:8**

In the Greek alphabet, Alpha was the first letter and Omega, which looked like a round horseshoe, was the last letter. So Jesus here is telling us He is there for us at the beginning, and will be there at the end, and all the time in between. We would say He is the A - Z. Jesus will be with us when we come to Him and give our hearts to Him; when we live day by day; and all the way to the time when He comes to take us home with Him.

### **Brother John on Patmos**

**"I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ." Revelation 1:9**

How did John, the dear old man who loved Jesus so much and taught people about Jesus' love, end up on that rocky, rough island of Patmos where the Romans sent their hardened criminals? Well, it is an interesting story:

The Roman Emperor was trying hard to get rid of all the Christians. He thought if he caught John, who was the last of Jesus' disciples that was still alive, and killed him in a horrible way, that would scare the Christians enough to make them stop talking about Jesus and worship the Emperor.

So he sent soldiers who caught the old man and threw him into prison. Then he ordered him to be boiled in oil. Have you ever dropped a potato chip into boiling oil and seen it sizzle and turn brown and crispy? Well, that is what the Romans wanted to do with dear old John.

They threw him into the huge pot of boiling oil, but he didn't sizzle; he didn't die; in fact he wasn't even hurt. Just like the 3 Hebrews in the fiery furnace, he was quite safe there in the kettle, until the soldiers took him out again.

They did not know what to do with this man they could

not kill, so they sent him to Patmos with the criminals. They were sure they had put an end to his work. But there, on that rocky, barren island, Jesus came to visit him and gave him the Revelation.

John probably felt his work was nearly over when he ended up on Patmos; but later he was set free. It was then that he wrote Revelation and later still, he wrote the wonderful gospel book of John, where he tells the story of Jesus, giving us special information we don't find in the other gospels. His most important work came after Patmos.

I sort of think that many of the criminals on Patmos, would have learned about Jesus and His love while on that island with dear old John, don't you?

**"I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last: and, What thou seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea." Revelation 1:10, 11**

### **The Lord's Day**

It was the Sabbath day and John had gone off alone to worship his Lord in nature. As he sat thinking on spiritual things and praying, he was given a vision. That is what he means when he says, "I was in the Spirit".

One of the most important things about understanding prophecy is that you must use the Bible to tell you what the Bible means, you must never guess or put your own ideas in there.

Some people try to tell us that when John said 'the Lord's Day', that he meant Sunday. There is nowhere in the whole Bible where Sunday is called 'the Lord's Day'. In fact Sunday is never called anything in the Bible except the 'First Day' of the week. But the Bible does have a day it calls the Lord's Day; it is the Seventh day Sabbath. "Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the Sabbath." Mark 2:28.

**"And I turned to see the voice that spake with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks; And in the**

**midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.” Revelation 1:12, 13**

All at once John heard a voice; an amazing voice. He turned quickly to see what it was, and there he saw his dear Lord. Not now toil-worn and poor as He was on earth, He appeared bright and glorious.

In the Ancient Sanctuary, the candlesticks were in the first apartment, the Holy Place, along with the Altar of Incense and the Table of Shewbread. This shows that Jesus was in the Holy Place in the Heavenly Sanctuary. Later, there comes a time when He moves into the Most Holy Place to do the final work of Judgement.

### **Two-Edged Sword**

**“His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire; And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters. And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp two-edged sword: and his countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength.” Revelation 1:14-16**

Do you know what the ‘two-edged sword’ is that went out of His mouth? It means the Word of God; the Bible. The Bible is the Christian’s sword. With it, we defeat the cruel enemy, Satan. “And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.” Ephesians 6:17.

### **Overwhelmed**

**“And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last.” Revelation 1:17**

John was so overwhelmed from seeing Jesus that he fell on his face on the ground. This is a very important point. When a messenger from heaven comes close to a person, he is so overcome with his own unworthiness that he will fall to the ground. He will feel very humble; he will not be bold or proud. If you meet people who are boastful and proud and talk a lot about how much they know God, you

can be sure they really don't know Him at all.

But it was the same Jesus who John had so loved when He was on earth, and now He came over to the dear old man and gently laid His hand on John to strengthen him. How precious to Jesus was that dear old disciple that had grown old in His service.

When we learned about Daniel, we read that he also fell on his face when he saw the heavenly beings. Even when God's Holy Spirit comes especially close to us in prayer or in a meeting, you will find that people will become very quiet, and want to bow down humbly. Sometimes they will quietly weep as they feel how sinful they are. Even heavenly angels bow down and show reverence to Jesus.

### **Reverence**

This is why we should always be reverent and quiet in church or worship. The Holy Spirit is never found where there is rude noise and loud, heavy beat music, clapping or shouting. He will not be present where people are all excited, jumping around and dancing. There might be a spirit there, but it is a demon spirit, not the Holy Spirit.

### **Jesus Lives**

**"I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death. Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter;" Revelation 1:18, 19**

These words of Jesus are so wonderful to us. Jesus lives. He died for us, and He rose again and now He tells us that He has the keys of death. Have you ever had someone you love die? If they are very close to you, it makes you feel so sad and lonely. But there is good news: Jesus has the Keys

Down through the ages, Christians have had a precious hope; Jesus was dead and He rose again. He defeated Satan and now He has the keys; the keys to let His dear people out of the prison of death and the grave. When someone dies trusting in Jesus, we know they will come out of that grave again. When Jesus comes, they will rise again, because Jesus has the keys.

Did you know there is a human power on earth today that claims he has those keys? Yes, the pope claims that he has the keys of heaven and hell. If you look on the Vatican flag, you will see a picture of two big old keys, crossed on there. But we know that Jesus really has the keys, nobody else has them.

Now Jesus tells John to write down everything that He is going to show him. He tells him to write down what he has seen, what is happening right then, and also what is going to happen in the future. Only God really knows what will happen in the future, and this is what that book of Revelation is all about, showing His children what the future holds.

### **Mostly Fulfilled**

When John wrote it, most of it had not yet happened; but now when we read it, most of it has already happened; some of it is happening; and the rest is soon going to happen.

The books of Daniel and Revelation are really one book. They go together and explain each other. Also the prophecies found elsewhere in the Bible, also fit in their places. You will even see that the One who gave the prophecy to Daniel, is the same One who gave it to John; Jesus our Savior.

“Blessed are they that keep those things written in the Book” The Bible is a whole book, and the real author of it is the Holy Spirit. Always pray for the Holy Spirit to help you and teach you when you study the Bible, and you then have the true Author of the Bible there with you, and you will be able to understand it. Jesus said; “If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine.” John 7:17. A heart willing to obey God is the key to understanding scripture.

To understand the prophecies it is also helpful to learn about the Ancient Sanctuary and its services and the History of Israel; because the prophecies refer to these things and the symbols are clearer when we understand where they come from. There are studies about the Sanctuary in this book.

### **Messages to God's People**

**“The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven**

**stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.”**  
**Revelation 1:20.**

In the first chapter Jesus starts talking about the Seven Churches and tells John to send the messages to them. Now there were more than seven churches in John’s day, so we know that the number and the names of these churches have a prophetic meaning. Seven in Bible numbers means complete or perfect. The seven churches represent all of God’s people; both back then and also down through the ages to the end of time.

It is important to understand that some of the Greek words that John originally used to tell us about what Jesus showed him, are a bit different than we see them translated into English. The word used for ‘churches’ meant congregations or groups of believers; and the word ‘angels’ means ‘messengers’.

In each period in history, God’s true people had a special ‘message’ that was Present Truth for their day, and Jesus showed us that all who carry that message for their time, are carefully held in His hand. He watches them with love. He ‘walks among the seven candlesticks’; this means He is always with His true people, guiding and teaching them.

These ‘churches’ stand for different periods in history, but the lessons in the messages to them, also have instruction for God’s children in all times, especially today.

**“God has a church. It is not the great cathedral, neither is it the national establishment, neither is it the various denominations; it is the people who love God and keep His commandments. . Where Christ is even among the humble few, this is Christ's church, for the presence of the High and Holy One who inhabiteth eternity can alone constitute a church.”**

**Upward Look 315.**

**REVELATION 2****Letters to God's People****1: EPHESUS 31 - 100 AD**

**"Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks;" Revelation 2:1**

Ephesus is the first and it was the church of John's time. Its time was from Jesus' resurrection to around the death of the last of the apostles. This early church was pure and eager to spread the truth about Jesus to the entire world. They watched carefully, so that those who were false-hearted and meant to sneak in and do the church harm, were sent away and the true believers were carefully taught.

**"I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not bear them which are evil: and thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not, and hast found them liars: And hast borne, and hast patience, and for my name's sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted." Revelation 2:2, 3**

The early apostolic church carried the Gospel to all the then known world, before the last of the Apostles died. They suffered persecution and many died for their faith. Their eagerness to obey Jesus' command to 'teach all nations' carried them to the ends of the earth.

**"Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love. Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent." Revelation 2:4, 5**

We see that already there was a problem in this church. Jesus said 'they had left their first love'. By John's day there had come into the church those who wanted to rule, and tell all others what to do. Paul said 'the mystery of iniquity was already at work' in his day. They were already starting to look to men, and not as much to Jesus and His Word, as they had been at first. Jesus warned them to go back to

their first love or he would ‘remove their candlestick’; and they would cease to be His people.

**“But this thou hast, that thou hatest the deeds of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.” Revelation 2:6**

The Nicolaitans were followers of a teacher called Nicholas, who began, among other things, to teach that the death of Christ on Calvary had done away with God’s Ten Commandment Law, and it was now no longer necessary to keep the Law of God.

This doctrine is also taught in our day. Some claim that the gospel of Christ has made the law of God of no effect; that by “believing” we are released from the necessity of being doers of the Word. This is the doctrine of the Nicolaitans, which Christ so unsparingly condemned.

Some historians say that the teachings of this group, also brought in the idea that the ‘clergy’ or ministers were separate from the ‘laity’ or people and should rule over them. Of course that idea was as old as paganism, because paganism always taught that, and used it to oppress and rob the common people. Jesus says clearly that we all are brethren, no ‘kingly’ power is to be found among His people.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**“He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.” Revelation 2:7**

In this promise to the faithful Jesus takes the minds of His people forward to Eden restored at last.

#### **2: SMYRNA 100 - 313 AD**

**“And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive; I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty, (but thou art rich) and I know the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan.” Revelation 2:8, 9**

Smyrna means a sweet smell, like a perfume. This was the time when God’s people went through a terrible persecution by the Emperor Diocletian. They would ‘have



tribulation ten days'. In Prophecy a 'day' represents a literal year. This refers to the ten years of persecution under Pagan Rome, from AD 303-313, where thousands were slain.

Their faithfulness, as they stood for His truth, was like a sweet perfume to God. Though some of the people in the first 'church' had not gone back to their 'first love', most had, and now in this church they stood bravely for the truth. This is one church that Jesus did not have to say anything bad about.

**"Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life."**  
**Revelation 2:10**

The 'ten days' here mentioned are ten prophetic years. Persecution has a way of making the church very pure because selfish, ease-loving people are afraid to join it, and those who do, are ready to die for it. There were many martyrs during those ten years and if we are faithful, we will meet them when Jesus comes and raises them to take them home, with all of His people.

There were some in the beginning of the time of this church, who were pretending to be Christians but were not, and were just there to harm the church. Because this is a prophecy, 'Jews' here mean Christian believers, because after the death of Jesus, the real Jews were no longer God's special people, instead, anyone who accepted the Gospel was special to Jesus. The Ten Day persecution no doubt got rid of many of the false ones, as they would quickly leave.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**"He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death."** Revelation 2:11

The promise to this 'church' was that if faithful, they would not be 'hurt by the second death'. This means they would be raised to have Eternal Life. How kind Jesus was to point out to these dear people going through this terrible time, that He had also been dead and rose again, so they, if

faithful, would also.

### 3: PERGAMOS 313 - 538 AD

**“And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges; I know thy works, and where thou dwellest, even where Satan’s seat is: and thou holdest fast my name, and hast not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas was my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth.” Revelation 2:12, 13**

Pergamos means ‘lifted up’. This was when Constantine pretended to be a Christian and it began to be popular to be a nominal Christian. This church covers the period of 313-538. During this time we see the rise of the Papal power; the idea that the Bishop of Rome should rule the entire world as a ‘god on earth’.

This letter is addressed to those who were clinging to the truth and not going along with the wrong practices that were coming in to the ‘Christian church’.

In all these letters we notice that Jesus does not see as people see. He does not recognize the ones who have rejected His truth, and are bringing in their own ideas, as His ‘church’. One of the things Jesus was warning these people about, was they were allowing the people who had the wrong ideas, to stay and teach error among them.

We see here the worship of images coming in, and the ‘faithful martyr Antipas’ dying for his faith. Who was this? It wasn’t just one person, but referred to those who refused to go along with the idea of the Bishop of Rome being the ‘papa’ or pope over all the churches. Many were killed or had to flee into exile for their lives.

**“But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication. So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate.” Revelation 2:14, 15**

The doctrine of the Nicolaitans was the idea that the death of Jesus on the cross, meant God’s law no longer had

to be kept. This error always becomes popular when Satan is busy bringing in false doctrines and practices that don't belong in the true worship of God. It gets people saying or thinking, "Well, it doesn't really matter so much what I do; it doesn't really matter so much what I believe; I only have to believe in Jesus, and I am sure to go to heaven." It was popular when the early church was being corrupted by apostasy, and it is very popular now.

Balaam was the one who led Israel into joining with pagan idol worshippers to celebrate their feasts and holidays. 'Committing fornication', meant that the church was starting to seek power from the government to enforce her decrees. The true church is to seek only the power that comes from Jesus, and is not to try and force anybody.

**"Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth." Revelation 2:16**

This Sword of His mouth is the Word of God, the Bible, which is what is to be used to expose wrong practices in the church.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**"He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it." Revelation 2:17**

Jesus promises those who remained faithful that they would eat of the 'hidden manna' and have a white stone with a new name. The 'hidden manna' means several things; the first one was the assurance that God would feed and care for them, even if they had to flee into desolate areas, like ancient Israel who was fed as they wandered in the wilderness. It also meant that even though their leaders and ministers were proving false, and they were not being given spiritual food in the apostate church, Jesus Himself would give them spiritual food and be their teacher. That is the same for us today.

"Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I am against the

shepherds; and I will require my flock at their hand, and cause them to cease from feeding the flock; neither shall the shepherds feed themselves any more; for I will deliver my flock from their mouth, that they may not be meat for them. For thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out. . I will feed them in a good pasture, and upon the high mountains of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie in a good fold, and in a fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel. Ezekiel 34:10-14

The white stone with the new name meant they would be members of the heavenly church, even though they were being thrown out of the wicked church that was claiming to be God's true church, and they had to flee for their lives into the wilderness. 'White' means that Jesus would see them as pure, even though the leaders of the now corrupt church declared them to be black with sin, because they would not be slaves to false doctrines, or give up what was right to obey these apostate leaders.

#### **4: THYATIRA 538 - 1517 AD**

**"And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write; These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass; I know thy works, and charity, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last to be more than the first." Revelation 2:18, 19**

Now in Thyatira, which means 'sacrifice and humility', we see Jesus is no longer talking to that great 'church' that had set itself up as the 'ruler of the world', but rather to His true 'church' now hiding in the wilderness. The apostate church had not repented, but had kept on doing wickedness and bringing in pagan practices. Jesus had removed their candlestick, and they were no longer any church of His. The faithful who refused to go along with the majority had fled into wilderness areas, and now Jesus sees them as His 'true church' on earth. This is the church of the 1260 years of papal persecution from 538-1517, the start of the reformation.

Jesus is pleased with their works as they humbly do their best to serve Him, and still share His truths with the world, though often, it costs their lives. Their 'works' were so wonderful that Jesus mentions them twice.

**"Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols." Revelation 2:20**

There was a problem here; they were allowing Jezebel to come among them. Who was this? In the Bible, Jezebel was the wicked wife of Ahab, that led Israel into idol worship. So here it is meant that they were compromising at times, by allowing teachers from Rome to come in and teach among them.

This message talks about 'adultery'; in the Bible, God says when His people join with earthly rulers, and also with pagan idol worshippers, that they commit adultery, just like a wife who runs away with another man who is not her husband. Jesus calls His true church His 'Bride'.

As long as these churches of the wilderness remained pure, and stayed completely true to Bible Truth, they had great protection from God. Sometimes armies sent out to destroy them were smitten with terror and fled away without ever coming near to the people of God. Other times God sent fog or storms to help His people and hide them from their enemies.

But when, weary of persecution, they made deals with the Romans and began compromising on even 'small' points of truth, God could not fully protect them, and terrible slaughters occurred. When Satan can't get us to go all wrong, he tries to get us to decide it is all right to give in 'a little bit' for the sake of peace, and to make others happy. But once we do this, Jesus cannot keep us fully safe, and soon Satan gets us all the way into his ranks. Never give in to wrong, even a 'little bit'.

**"Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of**

**their deeds. And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.” Revelation 2:22, 23**

Here is a clear prophecy made by Jesus, that the course the church was following to seek worldly power and control nations and kings, would lead to great suffering and strife. The ‘great tribulation’ referred to here is the 1260 years of papal persecution.

**“But unto you I say, and unto the rest in Thyatira, as many as have not this doctrine, and which have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak; I will put upon you none other burden. But that which ye have already hold fast till I come.” Revelation 2:24, 25**

Here Jesus is encouraging those who have not gotten mixed up in this power-seeking and compromising with the world. Although they may not know as much as they ought to, He accepts them, as they are doing their honest best to serve Him.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**“And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations: And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers: even as I received of my Father. And I will give him the morning star. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.” Revelation 2:26-29**

The church in those days was busy seeking civil power to rule the nations of earth; the faithful were sorely harassed and hounded by church and state powers, but Jesus was telling the faithful ones, that if they were true to Him, the day would come when they would have the victory and real power through Him.

Jesus here promises them the ‘Morning Star’. This is a wonderful promise with several meanings. Jesus is the ‘Bright and Morning Star’, so these people would have Jesus with them in their trials. The Morning Star appeared close to dawn, so this means that even though the terrible

night of the 'Dark Ages' was upon them, the dawn would come again. Wycliffe, who was the first of the reformers to start trying to return the Word of God to the common people, was known as the 'Morning Star of the Reformation'. Yes, the dawn would come. The darkness would be made to flee.

## REVELATION 3

### Letters Continued

#### 5: SARDIS 1517- 1820 AD

**"And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write; These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars; I know thy works, that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead. Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die: for I have not found thy works perfect before God." Revelation 3:1, 2**

Sardis means 'what remains', and we see Jesus saying that there were still some good things remaining in this church, but they needed to be strengthened. This is the time of the Protestant churches that grew out of the reformation.

The reformation started out as 'Thyatira', humble and faithful, eagerly searching the Bible for heaven sent truth. During this early reformation period, this church was still Thyatira; but there came a time when they stopped seeking for truth and became proud, and stopped searching the scriptures. Instead they made 'creeds' and decided they would not believe anything that their fathers had not believed. Then Jesus could not teach them any more. He told them that even though they thought they were so good and alive, they were really spiritually dead.

This terrible state of affairs seemed to come about after the Council of Trent, which began Rome's counter-reformation. The Protestant reformers, coming out of the Church of Rome, had refused to acknowledge the Bible Sabbath which had been kept by most of the 'church in the wilderness', and clung to the Sunday which has no higher authority than the decrees of the papacy. During this time

even most of the Waldenses also dropped the Sabbath, so as to be in harmony with the Reformation.

By doing this, they gave Rome the opening she needed to re-gather her forces, and after the Council of Trent, the Jesuits went all over the world, enforcing the dictates of the papacy as of higher authority than the Bible.

Along with the rejection of the Bible Sabbath, the ferocity of this Jesuit militia of Rome, may have been one of the reasons the Protestant churches dug in and stayed on their old creeds, instead of progressing to clearer truth. Soon they were just as much following tradition as had the papacy before them.

**“Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee. Thou hast a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy.” Revelation 3:3, 4**

Jesus is here telling them to remember how the reformers first started getting the wonderful light of the Gospel; it was through searching the Word of God for themselves, and obeying what they found there. Those who did this, were blessed, and remained spiritually alive. They were the ‘worthy’ ones.

There were many missionaries that gave all they had, including their lives, to carry Bible light into the dark countries of the earth. There were later reformers, who brought clearer Bible truth to the Protestant churches. But sadly, they were mostly persecuted by the state churches, just as Rome had persecuted the earlier reformers.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**“He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.” Revelation 3:5, 6**

Jesus says that there were a few faithful ones among them, and if they were over-comers, they would remain in



His Book of Life. He warned the others that if they did not 'watch', He would come as a thief and they would not know it. This is exactly what happened when the 'Great Advent Awakening' began to take place in the 1830s. Most of the popular churches rejected it. Their candlestick was removed and given to a small, humble group that chose to study and follow the Word of God, instead of the popular way.

There are many still today, who think they are alive and just fine spiritually, but they are really dead to Jesus and His claims on their lives.

### **6: PHILADELPHIA 1830-1850 AD**

**"And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth; I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name. Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee." Revelation 3:7-9**

Philadelphia means 'Brotherly Love' and this is one of the 'churches' that Jesus has nothing bad to say about. This is another place where we see that Heaven does not look at things the way we do. No history book made by man would have declared that the Advent Movement and the Millerites of the 1830s-1844 were the 'True Church' for that time; but this is exactly what we find in this message.

Here again we see false Christians, 'that say they are Jews and are not'. These were the ones in the popular churches who rejected the message from heaven about the end of the great prophecy of the 2300 days in 1844.

In the Sardis church Jesus warned that most of the church was dead, or ready to die spiritually. Now most of the church fell, and become the 'synagogue of Satan'. As they rejected the message of Jesus' soon coming, they showed they did not truly love Jesus, and Satan came in

with his ways and they welcomed him.

The true believers went through hard times, as they were scorned and cast out of their churches, and even sometimes their families, for believing in Jesus' soon coming. But Jesus says, don't worry, I have given you an open door and nobody can shut it. This was the door to the Most Holy place in the heavenly sanctuary. The great Day of Atonement had begun in heaven, but most of the so-called 'Christian' world couldn't have cared less.

The Advent believers were terribly disappointed when Jesus did not come to earth on Oct. 22, 1844, but they were thrilled later to learn about the door opened in heaven, and how they could, by faith, see Jesus as He did the work of deciding who's names would be left in the Book of Life and go to heaven with Him when He returns. Soon the people who are alive on earth will be judged; this will happen as they decide whether they will obey God's Word and the commandments, or follow what men tell them to do, and disobey God.

**"Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth. Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown." Revelation 3:10, 11**

Notice here Jesus talks about His soon coming, He is encouraging the little group who clung to the Bible truth they had learned, and knew it showed His coming was near. They patiently kept studying after the 'Great Disappointment' when they thought Jesus was going to come to earth on October 22, 1844 and He didn't. Because of their patience and faith in His word, soon further study and the guidance of the Holy Spirit brought them to the truth about the 'Cleansing of the Sanctuary' and the final work for man being done by Jesus in Heaven.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**"Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God,**

which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.” Revelation 3:12, 13

### **7: LAODICEA 1852 - END**

“And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God; I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. So then because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth.” Revelation 3:14, 15

There are two churches that Jesus said nothing bad about, but here is the saddest church of all, for Jesus has nothing good to say about them. This is our time, starting approximately 1852, and it is important that we understand this message. Laodicea means ‘Judged’ for we live in the time when the Investigative Judgment is taking place in heaven to see who will go home with Jesus and who will not.

This church is so offensive, that Jesus says He is going to spit them out, because they are disgusting to Him. Spitting them out of His mouth, means He will not plead for them when their names come up in the Judgment. Without Jesus to plead on their behalf, they are lost, with no hope to ever see heaven.

At the very time in history when they should be eagerly seeking God, and preparing for Jesus’ soon coming, they are worldly and indifferent. They just don’t care; and that is the greatest possible insult to God that man can make.

“Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.” Revelation 3:17, 18

The sad thing about these people is that they think they are perfect, when they are not right at all. What can we do

about this? We must believe what Jesus tells us, that we *are* a mess; we *are* poor, blind, miserable and naked people. That's as bad as it could possibly be.

Jesus tells us what we need to buy of Him. The Gold is Jesus' Faith and Love. The White Raiment is the Righteousness of Jesus. The eyesalve is having the Holy Spirit to teach and guide us, so we know right from wrong, so we can see clearly what is really going on. It also refers to the extra guidance that Jesus has given His last day people in understanding the prophecies. We need this 'eyesalve' to be able to correctly 'see' the truths hidden in the scriptures. To 'apply it' we need to carefully study the inspired Word of God praying for the Holy Spirit to teach us personally.

So how do we 'buy' these things anyway? How do we pay for them? Salvation is a free gift; but it costs us everything we have and are. We can only 'buy' these things by a complete surrender of our lives and hearts to Jesus.

**"As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent." Revelation 3:19**

Sweetly, Jesus seeks to encourage us by saying He is rebuking us because He loves us. We must repent and be sorry for our sins and pray, asking Jesus for 'white raiment'



of His perfect character; the 'Gold' that represents the Faith and Love of Jesus. Applying the 'eyesalve' for our spiritual eyes, means we need to have the Holy Spirit teach us and guide us as we diligently study the Bible and the Spirit of Prophecy writings for ourselves. Then, in the enabling power of Jesus, we will obey what we find there.

Jesus has told us that if we ask the Father, in the name of Jesus for the Holy Spirit, we will receive Him. John 14:26 "But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you."

Jesus is outside the hearts of the people in this 'church'. He warns them He may have to reject them, but He is trying so very hard to get individuals to open up their hearts and let Him in, so He can re-create and save them.

**"Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me." Revelation 3:20**

There is something important to notice here. Jesus is talking to individuals. All the man-made churches of this day have rejected Jesus as leader; and now Jesus is saying 'any man', anyone at all, who wants His company, He will come in and live with that person. What a wonderful thought! You can enjoy living with Jesus yourself, today, if you will just 'open the door' into your heart. It is a wonderful experience.

The people of this church will end up in two groups; by far the larger group will keep thinking they are just fine and nothing is wrong with them or their churches. They like to be called Christians, but love the ways of the world more than the things of Jesus. In their churches they have gotten used to taking the word of the minister, ahead of the Word of God. In the final test, they will obey men's rules and be lost. We don't want to be lost and think we are just fine. We need Jesus in our hearts.

"The heavenly Teacher inquired: "What stronger delusion can beguile the mind than the pretense that you are

building on the right foundation and that God accepts your works, when in reality you are working out many things according to worldly policy and are sinning against Jehovah? Oh, it is a great deception, a fascinating delusion, that takes possession of minds when men who have once known the truth, mistake the form of godliness for the spirit and power thereof; when they suppose that they are rich and increased with goods and in need of nothing, while in reality they are in need of everything.” 8 Testimonies 249.

The other group will believe Jesus’ words; they will repent and ask Jesus to come in and take charge of their lives. They will ask Him for the White Raiment, the Gold tried in the fire and the Heavenly Eyesalve. They will apply the Eyesalve through careful personal study of the Bible and ‘Spirit of Prophecy’ writings. They will invite Jesus to come in and live with them. Jesus and the Holy Spirit will work in them and with them, and they will be made ready to meet Jesus. They will follow and love the Truth of God’s Holy Word and they will refuse to follow the laws of man that would force them to disobey God and break His Sabbath day. In the final test, they will stand steadfast in the power of Jesus.

#### **THE PROMISE:**

**“To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.” Revelation 3:21, 22**

Some people are teaching that we can’t overcome sin, even in the power of Jesus; but here we see that only those who overcome, be the cost what it may, will sit down with Jesus in His kingdom. Jesus never asks us to do what cannot be done.

**“The angel of the LORD encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.” Psalm 34:7**

**REVELATION 4****The Throne & the Book**

**“After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter. And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and one sat on the throne. And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and there was a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald.” Revelation 4:1-3**

In his vision John now sees heaven opened and a great voice tells him to come and see what is there. He sees the great throne room of God in heaven, bright and full of beautiful colors.

In these visions everything has a meaning; so these colors have a meaning also. The Rainbow: this has several meanings. We know the rainbow first appeared as a sign of God's promise not to again destroy the earth with a flood. It tells us about God's mercy mixed with His justice, and the Gospel of Salvation mixed with the Law of God. It also is a symbol that Jesus uses; wherever in prophecy we see clouds and that rainbow, we know that Jesus is there.

Satan has stolen that symbol, as he steals everything that Jesus gives us, and he uses it for his own purposes. He uses it as a symbol for New Age spiritualism. But we know it truly belongs to Jesus.

Jasper anciently was red and purple and the ‘sardine’ stone was bright red. Red was a symbol of royalty and red and purple were usually worn by kings. Red also reminds us of the Blood of Jesus shed for our sins, and when put together with blue which means Gods justice and Law, we see purple; justice and mercy mixed together.

Emerald is a green stone. Green is a symbol of life and faith, and the beauty and simplicity of trusting in God. When Jesus comes in the clouds, a great rainbow will be around Him.

**“And round about the throne were four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold.” Revelation 4:4**

Here we see a wonderful sight, twenty-four ‘elders’ sitting around the throne of God. Who are they? Why are they there? Well, we can figure that out as we look at the clues given to us.

First the number; twenty-four is  $2 \times 12$ ; there were 12 tribes of Israel and 12 disciples, together that is 24. This represents God’s people from both the Old and New Testament times. It is very clear that these ‘Elders’ are human beings that God has taken to heaven ahead of time to help with the judgment. All proper courts use a jury and it has to be made of ‘peers’. That word means ‘equals’. We could not have a jury of angels, or beings from other worlds, that would not be fair. No, these are a jury of people from earth.

We know this because it says they thank God for redeeming them from earth. (See Revelation 5:9) So who are they? We don’t know their names, but when Jesus rose from the dead, He raised a lot of people at that time, and when He went to heaven to continue His work for us there, He took these ones with Him to present to His Father. (See Matthew 27:52, 53)

**“And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God.” Revelation 4:5**

Here is a wonderful scene, it shows us how busy Heaven is, working for our salvation.

**Lightnings:** When the angels come and go from the throne of God on their errands to help people on earth, they are like bolts of lightening. Faster than any spaceship man can even imagine, faster than light; these powerful messengers come and go bringing power and help to God’s children on earth.

**Thunderings and voices:** This means messages from God going forth to do their work at different times in the



history of God's people here on earth.

**The Seven Lamps:** Where did we see those? Why in chapter 1. The candlesticks and lamps are the same thing; they are the congregations of God's dear children through all the ages, and the work of the Holy Spirit in them and for them. We are shown them as right before the throne, the center of God's attention.

When you are tempted to feel all alone or afraid, read these verses and think about that great throne room and those powerful forces all working hard to save you and me.

**"And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind. And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle." Revelation 4:6, 7**

Now we see something very different; four 'beasts' or 'living creatures' are before God's throne. Now it may be nice to imagine that God has some wonderful and strange beings in His universe and I am sure that He does; but this is prophecy, and in prophecy everything has a meaning and is shown us for a reason. Read about these 'creatures' and then turn over in your Bible to Ezekiel 1 and also 10, and there you will find similar descriptions of these four 'creatures'. Both of these word pictures are telling us the same story, and both are symbols with much meaning for us.

They are symbols that represent God's true people and their work on earth. They are shown as if they are already right there in heaven, in front of God's throne, because God's attention is focused on them; but they are really here on earth. It is the same as the lamps or candlesticks, they are shown as if they are in heaven, but they are God's congregations here on earth.

Let's look at what this interesting word picture shows us. 'Full of eyes'; eyes in prophecy mean several things; knowledge, the Holy Spirit, and spiritual awareness. Remember that the last church, Laodicea, is 'blind'; it is not 'full of eyes'.

But the people of God represented by these ‘creatures’ have the Holy Spirit, and He has been teaching them knowledge of God’s Word. They are using the ‘eyesalve’, and are spiritually aware of what God is doing in this world.

We’ll look at the faces later; but notice what they are saying, “Holy, Holy, Holy. Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come.” They are telling others about God and their lives are bringing honor to Him. When we live the way Jesus has taught us to live, our lives are like Jesus’ life on earth was, and we bring honor and glory to Him that sits on the throne. It is just as if we were right there before God’s throne, praising Him.

I want to live in such a way that my life is bringing glory and honor to God, don’t you? Then when we read about these wonderful creatures, we can know we are a part of them.

**“And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle.” Revelation 4:7**

These four symbols were also around the sanctuary on banners in ancient Israel and represented the four main tribes one on each side, North, South, East and West. Now in Ezekiel we see that each ‘creature’ had four faces; here they have one each, but the same four faces. The meaning of the faces is the same.

Traditionally these four symbols are also used for the writers of the four gospels.

**The Lion:** refers to royalty. God’s children are ‘Kings and Princes’ of the heavenly kingdom; we are ‘children of the Heavenly King’. Also, Jesus is the ‘Lion of the tribe of Judah’, and His children are like Him. It also stands for courage and bravery.

**The Calf, or Ox:** This stands for sacrifice, as these animals were used for sacrifices. It also means service, as the ox was a hard working beast of burden. These people of God have sacrificed all for Jesus, and they serve faithfully as did Jesus when He was on earth.

**The Man:** These are real people, doing a real task

on earth. The symbol of a man stands for wisdom and knowledge.

**The Eagle:** The eagle, like the lion, can stand for courage, and the wings also mean speed; but the main thing that the eagle means in this prophecy is ‘eyesight’. The eagle can see details at great distances; they have some of the most wonderful eyes in all creation.

What we see here are a people, who have the messages of Prophecy, which gives them the ability to see spiritual things and also to see great distances into the future. They are going forward with speed and courage to carry this message to others.

**“And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come.” Revelation 4:8**

Wings in prophecy stand for speed, and the carrying of a message, and here we see six of them. Even the fastest prophecy beast in Daniel 7 only had four wings.

Wings represent many things: In Exodus 19:4, wings “carried” the Israelites out of bondage. Ecclesiastes 10:20 says, “that which hath wings shall tell the matter.” One of the things that wings represent is that they carry something; in the case of God’s last day people, it is the final warning from God. Another thing that wings represent is speed, as in Daniel’s vision concerning Alexander the Great. The final work will be rapid and the message of warning shall go out to the world very quickly by simple ways.

Another very common usage of wings in the Bible is as a covering, such as this text from Ruth 2:12: “a full reward be given thee of the Lord God of Israel, under whose wings thou art come to trust.” In Ezekiel 1, two of the wings “covered their bodies.” God’s people will be ‘Under His Wings’ of protection and love, as they speed on errands of mercy and carry the message to the entire world.

In this verse we also see a clue about the message they carry; they talk about God ‘which was, and is, and is to come.’ Notice the start of the three angels’ messages in

Revelation 14:7, we see that same message; God who was: He was our Creator and Redeemer; He is: He is our God and is with us right now, and the judgment is happening; and He is to come: Jesus is soon coming back to earth to take His people home.

These are very exciting times to live in, when the most wonderful messages ever given are going out to the world and Jesus is coming very soon.

**“And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.” Revelation 4:9-11**

These heavenly beings are thrilled as they learn more and more of the Goodness and Love of our Wonderful Heavenly Father and the Lamb, and they are overcome with joy and gratitude and fall down on their faces and offer their crowns to Him.

## **REVELATION 5**

### **Worthy is the Lamb**

**“And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof? And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon. And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon.” Revelation 5:1-4**

Here we see God holding a book, all sealed up with seven seals. And the question is asked “Who is worthy to open this Book?” Nobody is found who can do this and John, who in the vision represents God’s people, begins to

weep with sorrow.

What is this book? Well, as the prophecies unfold in Revelation, we can see it stands for the messages found in the Word of God, and it includes the History of man on earth; the Prophecies; and the plan of Salvation.

When man fell into sin, and this world was taken captive by Satan, there was no way it could be saved, except one. The Creator Himself, Jesus, had to pay the price; no one else was 'worthy'; no other being could do it. Here we see that again, Jesus is the only One who is worthy to open the seals and reveal His Word to mankind and all His created beings.

But, how does the Word of God get sealed up so no one understands it? It happens when men follow men, and listen to them, instead of studying and learning from God for themselves, allowing Scripture to interpret Scripture. The Scribes and Pharisees in Jesus' day had done this.

"The scribes and Pharisees professed to explain the Scriptures, but they explained them in accordance with their own ideas and traditions. Their customs and maxims became more and more exacting. In its spiritual sense, the sacred Word became to the people as a sealed book, closed to their comprehension." Signs of the Times May 17, 1905.

They had the word of God in their hands; but the traditions which had been handed down from generation to generation, and the human interpretation of the Scriptures, hid from them the truth as it is in Jesus. The spiritual import of the sacred writings was lost. The treasure house of all knowledge was open to them, but they knew it not. God does not conceal His truth from men. By their own course of action they make it obscure to themselves.

**"And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof. And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth. And he**

**came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne.” Revelation 5:5-7**

Now we see one of the elders say to John; “Don’t cry, there is hope. See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered and can open the book.” John turns around to see this fierce Lion, and what does he see? Why he sees a Lamb. And not just a sweet little gentle lamb, but this Lamb is wounded and dying, it is the Lamb that has been slain.

But there is something very special about this Lamb; it has seven eyes, and seven horns. We already learned that eyes mean spiritual insight; the Holy Spirit; the ability to ‘see’ the future; and also knowledge. Seven means perfect, complete or ‘all’. This ‘Lamb’ has all wisdom, knowledge and ability to know the future.

He also has seven ‘horns’; again seven means perfect and complete, and horns stand for power, rulership, a king. So Jesus, the slain Lamb of God has all Power, in heaven and earth.

This is surely a wonderful Lamb. If we, the way humans think, were going to show a mighty power, we would show a roaring Lion, or something savage and fierce. But God shows us the One who has all power in heaven and earth; the slain Lamb of God.

**“And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;” Revelation 5:8, 9**

**“And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth. And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive**

**power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.” Revelation 5:10-12**

Next we see the thousands and ten thousands of angels and heavenly beings declaring that, yes indeed, Jesus, the Precious Lamb of God, is worthy of all praise and honor. Jesus, the Lion of Judah, can unseal what has gotten sealed up by man’s customs and traditions!

**“And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever. And the four beasts said, Amen. And the four and twenty elders fell down and worshipped him that liveth for ever and ever.” Revelation 5:13, 14.**

Finally we see all the creatures in the whole universe declaring the same thing, “Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.”

When the ‘Great Controversy’ between Christ and Satan is all ended, every being in heaven and earth and the whole universe of other worlds, will agree that God is right, and He could have done nothing better than what He did, to save mankind. Even Satan and the lost will admit this. How sad that they admit it too late.

Let us be among those who know it now, and admit it now, and tell others about it now, that Jesus is Worthy! Worthy of our love, our trust, our obedience, our worship and our hearts forever. “And the four beasts said, Amen.”

**“For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.” Isaiah 9:6**

**REVELATION 6**

## **The Seven Seals**

**“And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts saying, Come and see. And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer.” Revelation 6:1, 2.**

In our last chapter we saw a book ‘sealed with seven seals’ and no one could open it until Jesus appeared as a ‘Lamb, as it had been slain’. Now we’re going to look at this book. It is not like our books; back then their books were scrolls. These were long strips of paper or fine leather, rolled around two sticks so that as you read them you would unroll from one side and roll up on the other side.

That is why the book could have seven seals, and as each seal was opened, you could see part of the story of the book. This ‘book’ that only Jesus was worthy to open up and show to us, shows a prophetic history of His church, His congregation of believers.

Just as the messages to the seven churches represented different periods of time in the progress of the true church, so now the seals on this book go over the same history, but it shows us the Great Apostasy, which allowed Papal Rome to develop out of what was once a pure church.

The messages to the churches followed the history of the true believers, but the seals show the apostate ones that did not heed the messages. All through both Daniel and Revelation, you will find the history of the world, from the time of Christ to the Second Coming, told over and over again. But each time it is told, it is showing us additional information.

As the first seal is opened, we see a white horse galloping out over the earth; this represents the early church in its purity, carrying the gospel message to the world. It is the same as the ‘Ephesus’ church. Notice it was the first ‘beast’ that shows it; the Lion, representing Jesus and the



Law, this beast is the spirit of this pure church. The Crown (Greek=Stephanos, a wreath of Victory) showed how this church would conquer as the truth of the Gospel of Jesus went throughout the world.

**“And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second beast say, Come and see. And there went out another horse that was red; and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword.” Revelation 6:3, 4.**

Now the second beast, the calf or ox presents the second horse. In this period as the church was turning more to the world, the true people of God suffered, and had to make great sacrifices to stay loyal to God’s Word. The calf or ox was an animal slain on the altars. This horse is no longer white and pure, it is red, the color of sin and blood. The church began to be corrupted. The ‘mystery of iniquity’ was at work in Paul’s day. Errors began to arise, and the love of the world came in at an early date. This happened as it became more popular to be a Christian and some influential pagan leaders joined the church. Instead of throwing away their heathen ideas and following the Bible only, they began to try and mix their pagan ideas with the Bible.

They thought they could do this, and make the Christian religion even better, and more acceptable to the people, but if you put muddy water in clean water, you have all muddy water. They didn’t want to give up their ‘Great Learning’ and prestige from heathenism, but as they tried to bring their pagan ideas into the Bible and the church, they did not make the church better; they lost the pure truth of the Gospel and followed worldly ways.

It was at this time that many of the errors and wrong ideas that are found in the modern versions of the Bible first happened. The former heathen leaders, now Christian in name only, mixed their ideas into the Bible, and when Emperor Constantine ordered fifty copies of a new Bible to be written, these ideas were put into them. Some of those old manuscripts are still around today, but the true church of



## THE FOUR HORSEMEN

Jesus never accepted them. The Roman church used them. They are what the writers of the new modern translations largely use today, and their influence is to confuse the true children of Jesus.

This horse goes up to the time of Constantine, A. D. 323, where the church began to ask for help from the government, and to flatter and try to please the Emperor, instead of serving God.

When we do not follow the Word of God faithfully and we begin to do things like the world, and want the power and pride of the world, then we loose our peace with Jesus. In this period, 'There was continual war and trouble.' Only Jesus can give us real Peace, and He tells us this does not ever come from the world. "Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you". John 14:27

The Bible shows us another group who have no peace (rest), it is those who 'worship the beast'. Revelation 14:11

**"And when he had opened the third seal, I heard the third beast say, Come and see. And I beheld, and lo a black horse; and he that sat on him had a pair of balances in his hand. And I heard a voice in the midst of the four beasts say, A measure of wheat for a penny, and three measures of barley for a penny; and see thou hurt not the oil and the wine." Revelation 6:5, 6**

The third beast, the man-face, shows us another horse. This time it is black. It is the opposite of the first one. It is totally false. It is totally following the 'wisdom' of man and has rejected the Gospel of Jesus. This is the time of the full setting up of the Roman Papacy. Now the idea of selling the gospel to the people for money, had come to be the big thing. The 'wheat and the barley', God's Word, the 'bread of life', was to be sold to the people for money. The rich had spiritual advantages that the poor had no access to. This horse goes from Constantine's time to 538 when the Papal See came into full power.

The voice that said, "Hurt not the oil and the wine," is not spoken by any one on earth, but comes from the midst

of the four living creatures; a voice from heaven. This shows that even though men may not care for Jesus' true sheep, yet the Lord was watching over them in this period of horrible darkness.

Jesus makes sure that the true spirit of Christianity is kept alive somewhere, and not entirely lost. In this darkness, some true believers began to flee into wilderness areas where they could keep the true gospel and read and obey the true Bible.

Jesus is the True Shepherd and He never leaves His true sheep to be destroyed by false ministers. He teaches them Himself with His Holy Spirit from the Bible and Spirit of Prophecy writings.

**"And when he had opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth beast say, Come and see. And I looked, and behold, a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth." Revelation 6:7, 8**

Now, the eagle-face shows us a horrible horse. Our Bible calls it 'pale', but the Greek word used means 'ghastly', like something dead and moldy; 'pale of yellowish color' that is seen in blighted or sickly plants. No horse is ever really this color, and no true church is ever like what this papal monster had become.

The eagle in the Bible is an unclean bird that savagely kills and eats other animals and birds. Now from 538 to the time of the reformation in the 1500s, (most of the 1260-year time when the Papacy was to rule the world), this corrupt church made it her business to kill and destroy all others who dared to disagree with her.

The 'sickly-plant' color was good to describe this time, as the 'light' from the Bible was taken from the people, and if you keep the light from a plant, it turns this sickly, pale color.

Just as Satan was allowed time to clearly show to the universe what his evil ideas would lead to, so this beast-

power church was allowed to rule for a set time and show what it stood for. Millions and millions of faithful Christians died for their faith and millions more perished from hardship as they fled this cruel power. Only God really knows how many this savage power killed.

Someday we will meet these dear souls in heaven, who loved Jesus enough to die for His truth.

**“And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held: And they cried with a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?” Revelation 6:9, 10**

No more beasts or horses now; this seal shows us the symbol of the blood of the slain, faithful ones crying out to God. This is just the same as when God said that Abel’s blood cried out to Him. It does not mean that all these martyrs are somewhere in a little box under the altar, crying. All those who died in that terrible persecution are asleep in their graves, waiting for Jesus to wake them up when He returns.

What does ‘under the altar’ mean? This world is what the ‘courtyard’ of the earthly sanctuary represents. The altar of burnt offerings, where the lambs were killed and burned, was in the courtyard. It was on this earth that the Lamb of God was slain. So the idea of being ‘under the altar’ shows them asleep in their graves on this earth.

**“And white robes were given unto every one of them; and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellowservants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they were, should be fulfilled.” Revelation 6:11.**

White robes were given to every one of them. They had been accused by the Papacy as vile heretics, and executed as criminals; their character had been robed in darkness. But the Reformation exposed the cruel crimes of the Papacy, and showed the truth about the holy martyrs of Jesus, and clothed them with white robes. Hence, the sermons, the prayers, and songs of praise of the Christian church, have

held these millions of the slain for Jesus' name, up to the world in spotless purity.

The time of this seal is the reformation which began to bring to the end, the Papal rule of the 1260 years. But it wasn't over yet, others were yet to witness for their faith as martyrs, "their brethren, that should be killed as they were."

It was at this time that a man named Fox, and others, began to collect up the stories of the martyrs that died for their faith and put them into books. God wanted their bravery and faith recorded and not forgotten. We can read the stories today and be encouraged, that the same Jesus who gave them strength and courage to be faithful to Him, will do the same for us.

Some people don't like to read the stories of the martyrs, as they imagine it makes them afraid, but when you think about how Jesus helped them, we can get courage, not fear, as we learn of their true faith.

**"And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood; And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind."**

**Revelation 6:12, 13**

Now we come to the end of the 1260 year period that ended in 1798. And we see some amazing things. We live in the times of this seal.

### **First; 'a Great Earthquake'.**

This earthquake was real and hit Europe on the 1st of November, 1755. Its center was in Lisbon, Portugal, where the headquarters of the terrible inquisition had been. It hit on a 'Holy day' and all the churches were destroyed and thousands were killed. They ran screaming, carrying their images of saints and crucifixes and clung to the altars in the churches, but all in vain. People and priests perished together. The earthquake affected at least four million square miles of the earth's surface.

### **Next; the Sun was Darkened May 19, 1780.**

Candles were lighted in many houses. Birds were silent

and disappeared. Fowls retired to roost. It was the general opinion that the Day of Judgment was at hand.

It was midnight darkness at noonday. . . .Thousands of people, who could not account for it from natural causes, were greatly terrified; and indeed, it cast a universal gloom on the earth. The frogs and night-hawks began their notes. (See Great Controversy, 1888, p. 307)

### **The Moon as Blood.**

The moon refused to give her light that night; and when it did appear, it bore the appearance of blood as described in this prophecy.

### **The Stars Fell.**

The stars of heaven fell Nov. 13, 1833. Other meteor showers have been seen at different times, but this was the most remarkable and extensive.

This amazing seal goes from verse 6:12 all the way to the end of chapter 7. We are right now living between verse 13 and 14. The things that are going to happen in verses 14-17 are when Jesus comes in the clouds of heaven.

People who have a lot of power, think they can get away with whatever they want to do, but someday soon, things will change.

**“And when he had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half an hour.” Revelation 8:1**

Now we momentarily skip chapter 7 that gives us more information about God’s people getting ready on earth for Jesus’ coming.

In chapter 8:1 we see silence for half an hour. In prophetic time, half an hour would be one week of real time; however, we also are told in Revelation 10:6, that “time, that is prophetic time, is no more”. The last time prophecy ended in 1844 and although there are many prophetic events that takes place after that, none are ‘time prophecies’. So, while we can have some thoughts about what this ‘silence’ possibly means, it is not a hard and fast prophetic fact. Here is one thought.

The sixth seal ends with the wicked aware that Jesus

is returning to earth to rescue His people, and crying for the rocks and mountains to fall on them. They, who have fought against God's truth, would rather be buried alive than to see the face of the One who died to save them. The One who they refused to obey and whose followers they killed and tormented.

Now if you go to a house and nobody is home, it is silent, isn't it? Well, if all the angels, and Jesus and all the beings in heaven are away, as they come to earth to gather the faithful ones and bring them home to the New Jerusalem, heaven would be silent, wouldn't it?

Some have said that when the redeemed children of God are taken into the cloud, to travel back to heaven with Jesus, it will take seven days. Heaven will be silent as all the holy beings travel with the rescued ones from earth to the Holy City. But oh what a lot of rejoicing and happy songs will fill it after they arrive. We can't even imagine.

I hope each one of you will be there that happy day.

There is also a second thought about these words; when Jesus announces the close of probation and mercy no longer pleads for unrepentant sinners; there will be a solemn time of awful silence. Every time something takes place that has great importance in the great controversy, there is no holy created being that is going to do anything else but be silent and observe what takes place.

**"And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places. And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?" Revelation 6:14-17**

The word-picture in these verses takes place as the people see Jesus coming in the clouds. What a sad situation! Jesus loves us all so much that He came and died for us, to



make a way for us to be saved. Heaven has done everything possible to help people get ready to go home with Jesus, but most people won't be ready.

Why? Because they wanted their own way and continued in their own sinful habits and pleasures and refused to obey God's law. Now as they see He is really coming, and He is going to put a stop to all their cruel, selfish deeds, they want to be buried alive rather than see the face of the One who loved them so much.

Here just a short while before, these rulers and dictators were getting ready to kill all of God's true people that were left. Then they were proud and boasting, making fun of those dear people who refused to disobey God, telling them how they were going to all be killed. Now these bullies are seen screaming to be buried alive; what a change.

## ***REVELATION 7***

### **The Four Angels**

We looked at what the seven seals mean, but there is more information under the sixth seal. This period goes from the late 1700s right to the time of the coming of Jesus, so it covers the very time we are living in today.

When you read prophecies like Daniel and Revelation, you have to remember that they do not run in a straight-line like a story, but instead they are made up of separate word-pictures, almost like pieces of a puzzle, and by studying carefully we learn how the pieces go together.

Each piece gives us more information about the big picture and each piece helps us to understand other pieces. We always have to remember to let the Bible show us how they go together and not guess ourselves, or we can get mixed up, and we must always pray and ask Jesus to send the Holy Spirit for our guidance as we study.

**"And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the**

**earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree.” Revelation 7:1**

Now here John sees another word-picture; again this does not happen after the one we just read, but it is a separate view showing something that happens during that 6th seal time.

John sees four mighty angels on the four corners of the world. Now some silly people say, “See the Bible is not true. The earth doesn’t have corners.” This simply means the four directions, north, south, east, and west. We often say things like, “The people came from the four corners of the earth,” and we mean from all over the earth.

Here these angels are holding the winds. Now, no human could hold ‘winds’ but these angels can. And what are the winds that they hold? Remember in prophecy, winds mean trouble, war, strife and destruction. God has powers working in this world to hold back the evil forces so that His people have a chance to get ready for His coming.

It says they protect the earth and the sea; this means the areas where there are a lot of people (the sea); and where there are just a few people (the earth). And the ‘Trees’, symbolize governments or rulers, or they may represent the righteous. Remember Nebuchadnezzar’s dream where a great tree was used to represent his rule in Babylon.

If these angels were not holding back the ‘winds’, Satan would soon destroy the whole earth.

**“And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads.” Revelation 7:2, 3**

Here comes another angel from the ‘East’, this means he comes from heaven with a message from God. Now we see why these angels are holding back the trouble, they are giving time for God’s servants, His true people, to get ‘sealed’. A ‘seal’ is like a stamp of ownership. These people are going to have a ‘seal’ that shows they belong to God.

This ‘seal’ is on their foreheads; this means that they have chosen with their minds to believe and obey God. The forehead area of the brain is where we make our decisions. In Ezekiel 9 we see a ‘man with a writer’s inkhorn’ placing a mark on those that ‘sigh and cry’. Why did they sigh and cry? Because of all the wicked things people were doing, and ignoring God’s Holy Law.

Now this ‘sealing’ is making up their minds so strongly that they will never change. Each person has to study for themselves, and get to know Jesus and His truth for their selves and love Him with all their heart.

How do you get to love somebody? First you have to get to know them, don’t you? So it is with God, as we learn about Him from the Bible, we pray to Him and allow His Holy Spirit to come into our lives and teach and guide us, we get to know Him and trust Him more and more.

Finally there comes a time when we are so solid in our decision to love and follow Jesus that nothing would change our minds. Then we are sealed. This takes time, and so the angels are holding the winds to give that time ,but as the final events unfold, people will be making their choices quickly. God knows when His people are ‘sealed’ into loving and obeying Him.

The wicked end up ‘sealed’ too, but in a sad-bad way. They have disobeyed God for so long, and rejected His love and His word, until their hearts become hard, and they reach a place where they would never change; no not in a million years.

We know that the Seventh day Sabbath is the ‘seal’ of God’s Ten Commandment Law. It is the only place in the law where it tells God’s name, (the Lord thy God) His territory, (Heavens and Earth) and His authority (He is the Creator). The ‘sealed’ people of God will keep His true Sabbath.

**“And I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel.” Revelation 7:4**

The number 144,000 has been a puzzle to many people.

Some think it is a symbol, and it is true that it means something. There were twelve tribes in Israel and there were twelve Apostles. Here twelve thousand out of each tribe,  $12 \times 12 = 144,000$ . It does seem that it may be a real number. It represents the people of God who will be alive on the earth when Jesus returns. They will go to heaven without ever dying.

The twelve sons of Jacob, who became the heads of great families, called tribes, were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun. Benjamin, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, and Joseph. But Jacob, on his dying bed, adopted the sons of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, to constitute two of the tribes of Israel. Genesis 48:5.

**“Of the tribe of Juda were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Reuben were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Gad were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Aser were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Nepthalim were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Manasses were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Simeon were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Levi were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Issachar were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Zabulon were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Joseph were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Benjamin were sealed twelve thousand.” Revelation 7:5-8**

But here in this list we find 2 names left out. Ephraim and Dan are not on this final list. The Bible says “Ephraim is joined to idols: let him alone.” Hosea 4:17. The tribe of Dan was also involved in Idol worship and repented not.

Some people have done interesting studies about the characters of these different ‘tribes’, and feel that they represent various personalities, you might like to read about it sometime.

God knows who these special people will be, who will be alive when Jesus comes and go home to heaven without ever dying. Maybe some of us will be among them.

**“After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb,**

**clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.” Revelation 7:9, 10.**

Some people worry when they think about the 144,000 because it doesn't seem like a very big number to be saved from the whole earth. But we never need to worry about that; there is lot's of room in heaven for all, and no one who really wants to be there, and truly gives their heart to Jesus, will be left out.

Just imagine this beautiful scene; all of the dear people of God from all different ages and countries, happy in heaven and singing joyful songs to Jesus. They have palm branches in their hands as a sign of victory over sin and Satan, and white robes, which show they all have lovely characters like Jesus.

Sometimes when you have to stand alone, because all your friends want to do wrong things, remember that wonderful crowd, so many you can't even count them, that are true to Jesus, and decide that you will be there also. On this earth it often seems as if everybody is going the wrong way and following Satan, but very soon, that is all going to change.

All God's children who humbly trust His promises will be safe in that day when Jesus comes to take them home.

**“And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen.” Revelation 7:11, 12.**

**“And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, What are these which are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they? And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.” Revelation 7:13, 14**

Here we are talking about this special group who has been sealed in their foreheads. They are dressed in pure,

white robes; this is the perfect characters that Jesus has given them. They came out of a time when the entire wicked world united to destroy God's truth and blot it from the earth. But in the strength of their mighty Lord, they stood firm for the truth and obeyed God's Commandments.

How did they get these pure characters? Here's the way; they washed them in the blood of the Lamb. They accepted the forgiveness made possible by Jesus death, and they chose to have Him live His perfect life in them. They chose to have Jesus' pure character instead of their own sinful one. Day by day, hour by hour, they kept choosing His ways in the strength He gave them, and when temptation came, they refused to yield. They cried out to Jesus to take all sin and wicked selfishness out of their lives.

It took time, and as victory was gained over one sinful trait, the Holy Spirit would show them more things that had to be overcome, and they would cry again to Jesus for victory. The closer they came to Jesus, and the more they learned about His beautiful character, the more sinful they saw themselves to be, and the more they cried to Jesus for Him to take away the sin from them, and cover their poor selves with His robe of perfect character.

Finally, when Jesus finishes His work in the sanctuary, there comes a time when He pronounces that all who are righteous will stay righteous, He gives them His perfect robe of character for their own, and their sins are blotted from the books of heaven.

**"Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple: and he that sitteth on the throne shall dwell among them. They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat. For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes."**  
**Revelation 7:15-17.**

These ones have a special experience; all who are saved in heaven will have passed through trials and been overcomers, but these final ones have seen almost the whole world

given over to Satan. They have seen the close of probation, when the Mercy of God is totally removed from the wicked and Satan has full control of them. They have seen the terrible seven last plagues of God's anger fall on the wicked, and have clung to Jesus through the time of Jacob's trouble.

The four angels are still holding the winds today; but we are seeing some winds slipping through in terrible disasters and strife. It is now time to get to know Jesus and give your whole heart to Him. There is nothing more important than that.

Revelation 7:13-17, are some of the sweetest texts in the whole Bible, read them often and think about what they mean. We want to be in that group.

## ***REVELATION 8***

### **The Seven Trumpets**

**“And when he had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half an hour.” Revelation 8:1**

This verse is the final one about the seven seals and we covered it in Chapter 6.

The sixth seal ends with the wicked aware that Jesus is returning to earth to rescue His people, and crying for the rocks and mountains to fall on them. They, who have fought against God's truth, would rather be buried alive than to see the face of the One who died to save them, the One who they refused to obey and whose followers they killed and tormented.

**“And I saw the seven angels which stood before God; and to them were given seven trumpets.” Revelation 8:2**

Now John sees another word-picture; again this does not happen after the one we just read, but it is a separate view. Here we are briefly introduced to the seven angels with the seven trumpets; but then it quickly moves to another part of the story.

**“And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel’s hand.”**  
**Revelation 8:3, 4**

We are about to start hearing about the Seven Trumpets, which is another set of word-pictures showing the events of history from another angle; this time from the main wars and battles that had some effect on God’s people. It seems also that these seven trumpets all talk about forces that attacked Rome; the first four; Pagan Rome, as it was breaking up, and the last three; Papal Rome, especially as it persecuted God’s people.

But first we are shown something from near the end of the sixth seal. It is put in here to give encouragement to God’s dear children. Incense is special herbs or spices, that when burned make a sweet smelling perfume in the smoke. This ‘angel’ here, shown offering sweet incense with the prayers before God, is actually Jesus, our Saviour, and He is pleading the sweetness of His perfect life and His spilt blood before His Father.

This is the ‘incense’ that makes our prayers able to be heard and answered by our Heavenly Father. It is only through Jesus’ sacrifice that we can even ask for forgiveness or help. We are told this so we can have courage that Jesus is there pleading for us and offering the precious incense. As we confess our sins and plead the virtues of Christ’s atoning blood, our prayers ascend to heaven, fragrant with the merits of our Saviour’s character. Notwithstanding our unworthiness, we are to remember that there is One who can take away sin, and who is willing and anxious to save the sinner. With His own blood He paid the penalty for all wrongdoers. Every sin confessed before God with a contrite heart, He will remove.

We are shown this scene from the sixth seal as encouragement, because the Seven Trumpets about to start



are going to show terrible scenes of war and strife. God wants us to know that our Redeemer is on the job, and we can have our prayers offered up by Him and receive help.

Remember though, that the incense is only offered *with* our prayers, if we don't ask for what we need and want, we will not receive it. We need to take all our needs and problems to the Father, through Jesus. Especially should we pray about the sin problems that we see in our lives.

God does not come and snatch bad habits or sins out of our lives without our permission, but the Holy Spirit will work with us to get rid of all the sin and selfishness from our lives if we pray to the Heavenly Father, claiming only the sacrifice of Jesus for us, and ask for the Holy Spirit and the Holy angels to do this work in our lives.

It is a partnership; we choose and ask, the Heavenly Powers enable us to make it happen. There is Power for each one of us to overcome all bad habits and sins in our lives. Not only to forgive them when they happen, but to change our hearts and supply the victory, so they stop happening. "Ask; and ye shall receive." John 16:24

**"And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake." Revelation 8:5**

This is a very important glimpse of an event yet future but which gets closer every day. Soon, no one knows how soon, the intercessory ministry of our High Priest in heaven, Jesus Christ, will come to its close. There is a time pointed out in various parts of the Bible when His work is finished. He has done all that can be done to ransom the lost race. This is when He makes His solemn announcement; "He that is righteous; let him be righteous still and he that is unjust, let him be unjust still." (Revelation 22:11)

Just before this time there will be a lot happening on earth; the 'voices, thunderings, and earthquakes' mentioned here indicate messages being sounded; upheavals and wars; terrible troubles; as mankind make their final decisions. The faithful will be still under the care of Jesus and the heavenly

angels, and although they will experience distress, they will not be left to the rule of the powers of darkness.

Now the scene turns to the first of the seven trumpets.

**“And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound. The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.” Revelation 8:6, 7**

This begins the word pictures Jesus uses to describe certain wars and events that happen from John’s time to the coming of Jesus. It is important to remember that these things are symbols, and so they mean something more than what they seem to say. A trumpet is a symbol of warning and war.

These Seven Trumpets all talk about forces that affected the Roman Empire, first Pagan Rome and then Papal Rome. This is the third set of ‘seven’ in the book of Revelation. The letters showed events of God’s people; the seals showed God’s professed people interacting with the world; these trumpets show events of the world as they affect God’s people.

The time covered by this first prophecy is from 395 to 419 A. D. It is the time when the Barbarians began to come from the north and attack areas of the Roman Empire. ‘Hail’ in this prophecy represents that they came from the cold lands of the north. Just as hail destroys the gardens, so these warriors destroyed everything in their path.

You will notice that these word-pictures keep saying one-third of this and that; this is because there were three main parts to the Roman Empire after Constantine left his throne divided among his three sons.

The Goths, under their leader Alaric, who called himself “the scourge of God,” attacked the failing pagan Roman Empire in the west. The ‘fire and blood’ talked about here refers to the terrible slaughter that these savage hordes brought upon the areas they ravaged. They burned whole towns and destroyed good farming areas and left them desolate. Finally Alaric was conquered in 403.

But more hordes of barbarians poured down from the north to attack the Roman empire under the haughty Rhodogast, who came with his armies almost to the gates of the city of Rome itself. After this, Alaric again returned, invaded Italy in 408, and in 410 he besieged, took, and sacked Rome, and died the same year. In 412 the Goths voluntarily left Italy. The angel's trumpet message was a very clear picture of what happened.

**“And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea; and the third part of the sea became blood; and the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were destroyed.” Revelation 8:8-9**

We see here more attacks on a ‘third-part’ of the Roman Empire. The period covered by this trumpet is from 428 to 476; and the prophecy was fulfilled in the terrible Genseric, King of the Vandals, and “Monarch of the Sea;” whose ravages gave us in human language the term “Vandalism;” meaning willful, wanton, and ignorant destruction.

This time the force came from the south; from Africa, and so the prophecy says a ‘burning mountain’ cast into the sea. He formed a great navy with many war-ships and raided and took away slaves and treasure from the areas of the Roman Empire.

In 455, just at the time the people of Rome had risen against the Emperor Maximus, and stoned him and thrown his body into the river, Genseric arrived with his warships. He came into the city and ravaged it, taking away all the wealth he could find, including the things from the Temple at Jerusalem that had been brought there by Titus when Jerusalem was destroyed in AD 70.

Finally the emperor of Rome decided to make himself a large navy to try and defeat Genseric's war ships. Money was gathered with difficulty, and a huge navy was built. They sailed down to Carthage, where Genseric's fleet was located, and could have conquered it, but the clever Genseric said he would surrender, and asked for five days to ‘make terms’.

All he did was gather his forces and attack the Emperor's fleet. During the battle, Genseric would take large barges full of burnable material and towing them close to the Roman ships, would set them on fire and let them sail into the other ships, setting them on fire also. How true the idea of a 'mountain of fire being thrown into the sea' really was. Genseric destroyed the Roman fleet and before his death saw the western part of the Roman Empire totally ruined.

When you study history in the light of Bible prophecy, you see that those who do wicked, cruel actions, have wicked, cruel happenings come back on them sooner or later.

**"And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters; and the name of the star is called Wormwood, and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter." Revelation 8:10-11**

Now another terrible force is seen coming against the dying Empire of Rome. Some people get confused as this says the 'star' came from heaven, but we have to remember that these word-pictures are all symbols to describe the forces who attacked Rome and brought about the prophecy that it would be divided, and made place for the strange 'Little Horn' kingdom, the papacy, to be set up. The prophecy points out that this 'scourge' would be brief but dramatic, like a blazing meteorite in the sky, it soon vanishes. The period covered by this trumpet was as brief as a burning star, 451-453.

By this prophecy we are directed to that dreadful scourge, the haughty Attila with his frightful Huns, who, during his reign, became the "terror of the world." Attila actually called himself the "Scourge of God," "Grandson of Nimrod, nurtured in Engedi, by the grace of God, King of the Huns, Goths, Danes, and Medes, the terror of the world." And "It is a saying worthy of the ferocious pride of Attila that the grass never grew on the spot where his horse had trod." He "alternately insulted and invaded the East and the West, and urged the rapid downfall of the Roman Empire."

The ‘fountains of waters’ refers to the area that he mostly attacked, which was where most of the rivers started, in the regions of the Alps, and on the portions of the empire where the rivers flow to most of Europe in all directions. It was really the area of the “fountains of waters.” Wormwood is a very bitter tasting herb; Attila was horribly cruel.

Finally he demanded Honoria, the daughter of the Emperor, to be his bride. At first this was refused, but finally as his ferocious attacks came again, she was given to him. There was a huge drunken feast at the wedding, and the next day when Attila did not appear from his room, his men left him alone for a while, thinking he didn’t want to be disturbed. Finally when he did not answer their loud cries, they went to see what was wrong. He was found dead, as the result of an artery in his throat having burst, drowning him in his own blood.

This is what alcohol can do. Remember the other conqueror that died as a result of a drunken feast? It was Alexander the Great.

**“And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.” Revelation 8:12**

This trumpet shows the blotting out of the Pagan Roman government. Sun, moon, and stars are here used as symbols of the ruling powers in the government; its emperor, consuls, and senators. A. D. 476 or 479. The ‘sun’ is a good symbol for the Roman Emperor as some of them had claimed to represent the sun god on earth.

The Emperorship was gone from Rome and an Ostrogoth king, ruled there, but some power remained in the Eastern part, Constantinople, where the imperial symbols had been taken and an Emperor still reigned.

The imperial Roman power, of which either Rome or Constantinople had been the seat, whether in the West or the East, was no longer recognized in Italy, and the third part of the sun was smitten, till it emitted no longer the faintest

rays. The power of the Caesars was unknown in Italy, and a Gothic king reigned over Rome.

But though the third part of the sun was smitten, and the Roman imperial power was at an end in the city of the Caesars, yet the moon and the stars still shone, or glimmered, for a little longer in the western part. The consulship and the senate [‘the moon and the stars’] were not abolished by king Theodoric.

Then the general of the emperor of the East, Belisarius attacked and defeated the Goths (AD 552). In the order given in the prophecy, the consulate ended and finally the senate was no more.

Justinian transferred the power in Rome to the Bishop of Rome, and worked to promote the growing power of the Papacy. This fulfilled a prophecy we will study later; “and the Dragon (here meaning Pagan Rome) gave him (the Papacy) his power, and his seat (city of Rome) and great authority.” Revelation 13:2

It is amazing how long and complicated historic events are told in a few words in the prophecies.

“And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.” Daniel 7:24

Just a quick look at how Daniel fits in with Revelation; they are really one prophetic whole, although they are written centuries apart.

The prophecy said that Rome would be divided into ten parts. It was not going to be conquered by another world kingdom, and that is just what happened. But at first when the Roman Empire began to collapse, there were more than ten ‘kings’ attacking it. There were eighteen. But during the time of the first three Trumpets, some disappeared, moved away, joined with other nations, or were wiped out, until only ten remained.

From the northern to the southern limits of the Western Empire, these ten, as they stood in 476 at the extinction of the Empire, were as follows:

1. The Angles and Saxons in Britain.
2. The Franks in all Gaul (France).
3. The Alemanni in North Switzerland.
4. The Burgundians in west Switzerland and southeast Gaul.
5. The Visigoths in southwest Gaul and Spain.
6. The Suevi in that part of Spain which is now Portugal.
7. The Ostrogoths in what is now Austria.
8. The Lombards in Noricum
9. The Heruli in Italy.
10. The Vandals in North Africa, with capital at Carthage.

Now before Papal Rome could fully get its power, three of these nations had to be 'plucked up by the roots'. The three that were removed were the Vandals, the Ostrogoths and the Heruli. They were destroyed by 538 AD and the Papacy then ruled where the Caesars had ruled before.

Bible prophecy always comes true, exactly.

**"And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound."**

**Revelation 8:13**

This is letting us know that however bad the first four trumpet-scourges were, the last three were to be much worse.

## **REVELATION 9**

# **The Seven Trumpets 2**

## **The 'Woes'**

The last three trumpets are also called the 'three woes'. Why? Because they were even more terrible than the four before them, and also, they were different because a new religion is here introduced into the world, a religion of darkness, almost the exact opposite to the teachings of Jesus. The ravages of these warriors of Islam were to be seen in the 'woes', of the last three trumpets.

The western part of the former Roman Empire has

been brought down in the first four trumpets. There is no emperor on the throne in the city of Rome any more. Instead the Bishop of Rome sits on the throne and rules over both the church and the government. So now the 5th and 6th trumpets bring attacks on the eastern part, where there still is a Roman Emperor ruling. By the end of the 6th trumpet, the eastern Roman Empire is destroyed completely also.

The word 'woe' or 'wo' here, is a cry of sorrow. The evil ways of men bring suffering and misery on themselves and others. Only in loving and obeying Jesus is real joy to be found.

**"And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit." Revelation 9:1, 2**

If you look back at the first chapter of Revelation, you will see there that Jesus had seven 'stars' in His hand and we learned that these were messengers to the churches. Here we see a fallen star; a religious messenger, but a fallen or false one. He has a key to turn something loose on the earth. This is a key of circumstances; long wars in other areas of the world allowed the development of this dark power.

Here we see him open up a pit, and smoke comes out so thick that the sun and air is made dark. Now remember these are all symbols, so what does it mean? This is telling us about when the religion of Mohammedanism was invented by the man that claimed to be a prophet. His name was Mohammed, and though he could not write, his teachings were remembered and written down by others, and later, after he died, these bits and pieces were gathered together into a new 'bible' called the Koran.

The 'Bottomless Pit' here can mean the dark and evil elements of the world, or any wild and desolate area. Mohammedanism poured upon the world from the desert lands of North Africa. Just as the gospel of Jesus is well described as light to the world, this religion is well described as dark-



ness. Jesus taught us to seek peace, and love our enemies; this darkness teaches men that war and killing their enemies is the highest and best thing they can do for their god.

Christianity was never to be forced on people; God can only accept willing service; but Mohammed taught that all should be forced to obey his religion or they should be killed. These people were taught that to die in battle while forcing people to worship Mohammed or ‘Allah’ as they called their god, was the best thing they could ever do.

They were told that they then go straight to a wonderful place where, they would have all kinds of beautiful women, wine to drink, and fancy food to eat forever. So they were happy to make war and didn’t mind getting killed fighting for their ‘faith’. This ‘smoke’ made it almost impossible for people taught like this to see the light of Jesus’ Gospel or breath the pure air of Bible truth. Jesus longs to have these people who are blinded by the ‘smoke’ to come to Him and be saved.

**“And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power.” Revelation 9:3**

Here we see two more symbols that make us think of the desert; the locusts that would come out of the deserts at certain times and eat up all the crops; and the scorpion, a nasty, poisonous creature like a long-tailed spider with a sting, that would strike with the sting in his tail and it would really hurt.

**“And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.” Revelation 9:4**

‘Green things’ here means God’s true people, who were not attacked by this power; but ‘those that had not God’s seal’ referred to Papal Rome. Remember, by now they no longer had God’s ‘seal’, His true Sabbath. They had set up, and were enforcing a false sabbath.

**“And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their**

**torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them.” Revelation 9:5, 6**

This power tormented the Eastern Roman empire but did not manage to destroy it completely, so the verse says ‘they should not kill them’.

Notice the five months; this is prophetic time, so a day equals a real year. This means for 150 years this force would be coming out of the deserts and striking the eastern part of the former Roman Empire. This time started in July 27th, 1299, so the one hundred and fifty years reach to 1449. Mohammedans of course, started long before that but this five months was when they had ‘a king over them.’

The tormenting power of these raiders made life a burden for the eastern empire, who were getting attacked by them; they would rather have been conquered by them and thus stop the torment.

**“And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months.” Revelation 9:7-10**

Here we have a description of what these desert warriors were like. It talks about their battle horses. The Arabian desert horses were amazing animals. They were raised by their owners in the tents right along with the family and were treated with gentleness, so they were very highly trained. At a word or touch from their master they would run like the wind into battle, or flee away across the sand.

The ‘Crowns of Gold’ were the yellow turbans these men wore. They had long hair, either braided up, or loose, and the ‘teeth of lions’ meant their fierceness in battle.

Again it talks about ‘many horses running to battle’. The Arab warriors did not march in rows or ranks like Greek or Roman soldiers; they swarmed down onto their enemies on their swift horses, almost as quickly as if they were flying. Before the blood soaked into the ground they were gone again, galloping like the wind.

What was this about their ‘tails’? Isaiah 9:15 “The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.” The teachings of their prophets indeed had a sting in them!

**“And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.” Revelation 8:11**

The rise of Mohammed was in 606 AD and for a long time after his death, there was no central king over them. Proverbs 30:27 “The locusts have no king, yet go they forth all of them by bands.” Each tribe had its own ruler; but in July 27th, 1299, Othman became king over them, and what we call the ‘Ottoman Empire’ was set up. We know that the five months begins at this time because the prophecy says ‘they have a king’. The ‘names’ given here are symbolic as both of them mean ‘destroyer’, and signify the destructive attacks of this power.

This ‘woe’ ends in 1449 and the second ‘woe’ starts.

**“And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God, Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates. And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men. And the number of the army of the horsemen were two hundred thousand thousand: and I heard the number of them.” Revelation 9:13-16**

Now we see this same dark, fanatical, religious power but this time coming from the ‘river Euphrates’, which referred to the area of the country of Turkey. The ‘four angels’ refer to the four great sultanies, Bagdad, Damascus,

Iconium, and Aleppo, of which at that time the Moham-medan power was composed.

Notice this amazing time period; an hour, a day, a month, and a year, and when it is all added together in that order, it reaches from the end of the Fifth Trumpet, July 27, 1449; all the way to August 11, 1840. Then this period of an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, would end. For this length of time, and to this date, the power of the Ottoman Empire was to continue. Did this empire loose its power at that time? Yes, it did.

On the 11th of August 1840, on board a British ship, the Turkish leader signed a paper that took away the independence and power of the Turkish Sultan forever. Where was Turkish supremacy after August 11, 1840? It was gone. Who now held that power? It was the four great nations of Europe.

Up until that time, they had continued to attack the eastern part of the Roman Empire, until the last remains of it were gone, and the modern nations ruled.

This amazing prophecy was pointed out and written up in the newspapers by Josiah Litch before August 11, 1840, and when it really happened right on time, many people, even former atheists and skeptics, believed that God's Word was true and that prophecy could be interpreted correctly by using the rule that a prophetic day equaled a literal year.

**"And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses were as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone. By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths. For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails were like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt." Revelation 9:17-19**

What is this? Fire-breathing horses? That's silly.

Oh, no it isn't; at this time gunpowder and guns were used for the first time against the people in Eastern Europe. When the pistols were held close to the horses as they rode

to the attack, it looked like fire and brimstone came from the mouths of the horses. This is also the time that knights in armor weren't much use any more, as the armor would not stop the bullets.

Notice here that it now says the third part of men were killed, where before they were only tormented. This power brought the Eastern Roman Empire finally to its political end. In this woe we see the forces of Islam again attacking, suddenly, without warning, but now with explosives.

"Having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone." These three colors, red, yellow and blue, were the ones the Turkish warriors wore. Again we also see the amazing war-horses of these desert people; even their horses were trained to attack and be fierce.

They also made great cannons, and using their power, managed to overthrow Constantinople, where the eastern Roman Emperor had for so long had his throne.

And what was all this about their 'mouths' and their 'tails'? Again the Bible can be used to interpret itself: Isaiah 9:15 "The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail."

This is talking about the religious leaders, and the men who claim to be the teachers and prophets in their mosques. These are the ones who direct the battles, and give violent instructions to the warriors to carry out.

**"And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk: Neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their fornication, nor of their thefts." Revelation 9:20-21**

Sadly, the Roman ecclesiastic power did not learn its lesson from these woes. If we have hard times, or when trouble comes into our lives, it is good to consider whether there are some lessons that God wants us to learn.

## REVELATION 10

## The Mighty Angel

**“And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire: And he had in his hand a little book open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth,” Revelation 10:1, 2**

We are now getting into some of the most exciting prophecies in the Bible. We know it is very important, because look Who it is that appears here! We see clouds and a rainbow, and a face like the sun. Who is this? It is Jesus; just like in Revelation 1 and Daniel 10. Setting His right foot on the sea, and His left upon the dry land, shows the part which He is acting in the closing scenes of the great controversy with Satan. This position denotes His supreme power and authority over the whole earth. He has a ‘little book’ and it is *open*.

Now what little book do we know that was closed? Why, the book of Daniel’s prophecies; he was told, “seal the book” until “the time of the end”.

The ‘end’ of what? The end of the wonderful time prophecies found in Daniel. The 2300 days/years and the 1260 days/years. The 1260 ended in 1798, and the 2300 ended in 1844.

“And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.” Daniel 8:14.

Do we see something happening in history that has to do with the book of Daniel in this time? Yes, we surely do. Towards the end of the 1700s many people all over the world began to study that very book deeply, and to understand the time prophecies in it. And the Holy Spirit led them to preach and write about the Coming of Jesus and His judgment of the earth.

**“And cried with a loud voice, as when a lion roareth: and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices.**

**And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered, and write them not. Revelation 10:3, 4.**

Hear the 'roar' of the Lion of Judah; it is announcing something important. Then we hear 'seven thunders' speak throughout the earth. What did they say? John was told not to write it down. Then why did Jesus mention it at all?

Something was going to happen, and it was not written down, or it couldn't have happened the way it needed to happen. We are now quite sure about what the seven thunders said; they told of the Great Advent Awakening, followed by the 'Great Disappointment' of October 22, 1844. The happenings of 1843-1844 are clearly told about in different prophecies in Daniel, Revelation, and in the parables of Jesus.

**"And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, And sware by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer: But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets." Revelation 10:5-7**

Here is Jesus, making a legal announcement; He holds up his one hand to heaven, like we do in a court of law, and he 'swares' by Him who liveth for ever and ever and Who is the Creator. This is Jesus Himself; He swares by Himself as there is none greater.

Then He says 'time shall be no longer'. What 'time'? Time for this earth? No, this earth lasted past 1844. Probation 'time'? No, we still have probation time today, although it is soon going to end. It means the prophetic time in the time prophecies. Jesus is here telling us that all the time prophecies end by that date in 1844; there are no more time prophecies waiting to be fulfilled.

"This time, which the angel declares with a solemn oath,

is not the end of this world's history, neither of probationary time, but of prophetic time, which should precede the advent of our Lord. That is, the people will not have another message upon definite time. After this period of time, reaching from 1842 to 1844, there can be no definite tracing of the prophetic time. The longest reckoning reaches to the autumn of 1844." *7 Bible Commentary* 971

Jesus goes on to tell us, that in the days of the seventh angel, when he starts to sound his trumpet, the 'Mystery of God should be finished'. What is this 'Mystery'? Part of it is the wonderful time prophecies of Daniel that for many years were only partially understood. Then around the end of the 1260 days/years, were opened up by the Holy Spirit to serious Bible students.

**"And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said, Go and take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth." Revelation 10:8**

In all prophecies, the prophet receiving the vision, represents the people of God, and, when the time comes, they will do what we see the prophet in the vision doing.

Here John takes the precious 'little book' from Jesus' hands. This is what God's people did at that time period; they took that book of Daniel as a special message from Jesus, which is just what it was.

There are people today that say there are more time prophecies to be fulfilled in the future; don't believe this, because Jesus Himself said 'Time shall be no longer'; there will be no more time prophecies, however, we can see events as they unfold in their order.

**"And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, Give me the little book. And he said unto me, Take it, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey. And I took the little book out of the angel's hand, and ate it up; and it was in my mouth sweet as honey: and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was bitter. And he said unto me, Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings." Revelation 10:9-11.**



He took the little book and ate it up. Here we see God's people 'eating up' the book of Daniel. We use the expression, 'he likes (some certain thing) so much that he just eats it up.' Well, God's people as they got into the prophecies of Daniel, just 'ate it up'. They loved it; it was like honey to them. Why? Because they really believed that this prophecy meant that Jesus was coming back to earth on that day. Those who love Jesus, and really belong to Him with their whole hearts, are longing to see Him come back and take them home to heaven with Him.

But the prophecy says something happened after they 'ate up' that sweet message from Jesus. Their 'belly was bitter'. What an amazing way to describe exactly what happened to God's people at that time.

They were so happy thinking they were soon going home with Jesus. At first, there was a mistake in the time they figured out, because they thought the period ended in the spring of 1843, which in our time would be 1844. So there was a small disappointment. Then, as they looked closer at history and the Great Day of Atonement in the Sanctuary services of the Jews, they found the exact day; October 22, 1844.

Then the message seemed to go out like wildfire. The very words of the parable of Jesus were used; "Behold the Bridegroom Cometh. Go ye out to meet Him!" The message went everywhere in the power of the Holy Spirit.

As the day grew closer, the believers prayed and searched their hearts to make sure they had put away every sin, and confessed and made right every wrong deed to their families and neighbors. With solemn joy they gathered to await His coming. The hours were spent in quietness and prayer. No one ever made 'ascension robes' as some critics say; nor did anyone climb up in trees or such either. These are false stories, told to make fun of these earnest children of God.

But the bitter belly came; they were disappointed as the time passed and Jesus did not appear. Most of the people then laughed at their former beliefs, and went their ways,

never again would these join with true believers. But the prophecy had a clue in it; "Thou must prophecy again."

This message is for us today also. Jesus is coming soon and we must be ready to meet Him in peace. Those who do not choose to repent and obey, will perish with the disloyal. There is no second trial. The gospel that is to be preached to all nations, kindreds, tongues, and peoples, presents the truth in clear lines, showing that obedience is the condition of gaining eternal life. Christ imparts His righteousness to those who consent to let Him take away their sins.

Jesus also longs to have us come home to be with Him; how sad He must feel when some of us would rather have the silly pleasures of this sinful world, than have Him, who loves us so much.

## REVELATION 11

### The Two Witnesses

**"And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and the angel stood, saying, Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein. But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months." Revelation 11:1, 2**

Here we see an angel talking about measuring something; measuring in prophecy refers to judgment. We know that Jesus started a special judgment on October 22, 1844; called the Investigative Judgment.

This verse tells us who was being 'measured' or judged here, it is 'the Temple of God'. What does this mean? It means God's people. Everybody that has ever claimed to belong to God has his name written in the Book of Life. But not all these people will go to heaven.

Why not? Well, take Cain and Abel, they both claimed to belong to God. Abel was faithful and obedient; but Cain was disobedient, became a murderer and never repented.

When Cain's name was looked at in the Book of Life, unconfessed sin was there, and Cain's name was blotted out and his sins retained in the book of sin. He won't be in heaven. So on and on the process goes, judging the dead by the records of their life, and whether or not they had unconfessed and unforsaken sins in their record.

This grand judgment is taking place, and has been going on for some time. The Lord says, measure the temple and the worshipers thereof. Remember when you are walking the streets about your business, God is measuring you; when you are doing your household duties, when you are talking to others, God is measuring you. Remember that your words and actions are being recorded in the books of heaven.

It says that God is not measuring the 'court', but it is left to the 'Gentiles'. This means that in this special judgment that happens before Jesus can come back for His people, the world, described here as the court and the Gentiles are not looked at. These are people who never even claimed to belong to God at all; they were just not interested. They are lost, and will be judged later.

Here next we see another mention of the 1260 days/years of Roman rule and how they would trample underfoot God's people.

**"And I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days, clothed in sackcloth. These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth. And if any man will hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth, and devoureth their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed. These have power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will." Revelation 11:3-6**

Then we see something new; 'Two Witnesses'; and they are 'prophesying for 1260 day/years dressed in sackcloth'. As you read verses 3-7, you will see clues to know what they are. They are the Holy Scriptures, the Old and the New Testaments.

They are in 'sackcloth'. Why? Sackcloth is something people would wear when they were very sad. Again we see that 1260 year period mentioned. The message of God's Holy Word is described as sad and hidden at this time, during which millions of true believers died for their faith. Even to be caught with a Bible meant death. But the Bible still 'prophesied', it still had 'power'. When people would get hold of the Bible and read it, or even be given a few verses written out by hand, they found the saving power of Jesus in it. It was the Bible that gave these people courage to live and die for Jesus' truth, and it will do the same for us today.

**"And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them. And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified." Revelation 11:7, 8**

Now we come to an amazing story in prophecy; we see the two witnesses 'finishing' their testimony in sackcloth; for that is what the words in Greek really tell us. So we know that something happened to the Bible near the close of those 1260 years that ended in 1798. Did something happen then?

Yes, it says a 'beast' comes out of the bottomless pit. The bottomless pit refers to the wickedness and spiritual darkness of this world; so out of this wicked world comes a new 'beast'; a new manifestation of satanic power.

In 1793, Atheism, calling itself 'Communism' arose mainly in France, and they passed a law outlawing the Bible. The Roman power had kept the Bible from the common people, but now this new power declared that the Bible was to be destroyed forever. 'It was 'killed'; in other words, it was to have no political influence at all.

What city is here shown to us? The Bible says three things; Sodom, Egypt, and where Jesus was crucified. But these are symbols here; Sodom meant the wicked and immoral way they lived, when they also ruled to have no proper marriage anymore. Egypt was where Pharaoh declared he 'knew not God', and France now declared the

same thing; and Jesus was crucified symbolically, when His people were slain in France in the St. Bartholomew's Massacre, years before. The city? It was Paris, France.

There happened events so terrible, that they are known as the 'Reign of Terror'. People were killed by having their heads chopped off by a machine called a Guillotine. So many people were killed that blood flowed down the streets and colored the waters of the river red.

When people refuse the Bible and the authority of God's Holy Law, it doesn't take long until terrible things happen. Why? Because when we refuse to obey God, Satan forces us to do his will; there is no other choice.

**"And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and an half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves. And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth. And after three days and an half the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them." Revelation 11:9-11**

The other nations saw the terrible events that happened when France by a decree of her government passed a law doing away with the Bible and all religion and belief in God. For exactly 3 ½ years, as the prophecy says, this went on. Wicked people celebrated; but soon terror took the place of merry-making. No one knew when his head would be the next to come off.

Exactly 3 ½ years later, that same government passed a law putting the Bible, and belief in God, back in their rightful place. All thinking people who saw the events that had happened, were made fearful of ever doing such a wicked thing again. After this time the Bible was held in greater reverence, at least by the Protestant nations, than ever before.

**"And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them. And the same hour**

**was there a great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand: and the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven.” Revelation 11:12, 13.**

This refers to the fact that a great missionary movement took place after this time. Bible Societies were started, and the True Received Text Bible was carried all over the world to the heathen people by missionaries.

What about the Earthquake? And the ‘tenth part of the city fell’? Well, France was a ‘Tenth’ part of Europe and the ‘Earthquake’, a symbolic one, referred to the terrible French Revolution. Like a real earthquake, it sure shook people up.

“And in the earthquake were slain of men [margin, names of men, or titles of men] seven thousand.” France made war, in her revolution of 1789-98 and onward, on all titles of nobility. It is said, by those who have examined the French records, that actually there were seven thousand hereditary titles of men, abolished in that revolution.

“And the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven.” Their God-dishonoring and Heaven-defying work filled France with such scenes of blood, carnage, and horror, as made even the infidels themselves tremble, and stand aghast; and the “remnant” that escaped the horrors of that hour “gave glory to God”, perhaps not willingly, but the God of heaven caused this “wrath of man to praise Him,” by showing all the world that those who make war on heaven make graves for themselves.

**“The second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly. And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever. And the four and twenty elders, which sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, We give thee thanks, O Lord God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come; because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned.” Revelation 11:14-17**

The Seventh Trumpet, which includes the Third Woe,

covers a lot of ground. Many people get mixed up on it and think weird things, but if we remember that it is full of symbols, and what these symbols mean in other texts, then we can see the word pictures God has put here for us. The other two Woes were attacks on the armies of Rome, and now here is a third Woe; what does it tell us is going to happen to Rome?

Well, This Seventh Trumpet begins in 1844, and we see here the time of the Investigative Judgment. What are the 'great voices'? It is the message of the Investigative Judgment being preached in the world. The Elders are happy that this 'Time' has finally come.

Why are they so happy about this? Because this is the time that Jesus is in the process of receiving His Kingdom. In some of the parables of Jesus we see more about this. In one He says He goes away to receive a kingdom; (Luke 19:12) in another, He goes into the Marriage; (Matthew 25:1-13) in another the King (Heavenly Father) makes a marriage for His Son; (Matthew 22:1-14) Did you know that most of Jesus' parables are also prophecies? Yes, indeed they are, and they give us clues to understand the prophets.

As we read about this Trumpet, it sounds like Jesus is reigning through the whole thing, but this is a process that is taking place. The books are opened; the life-records of all the people who have ever claimed to belong to God, are looked at. They are not there in person, but their records are all there in detail, and the angels are the eye-witnesses.

For those who claimed belief in the Redeemer and remained faithful, Jesus represents them before the Father. Those who did not remain faithful or who claimed to be God's people, while following their own ways, have no one to represent them. They are blotted out of the Book of Life.

We are living in this time of the Seventh Trumpet, when Jesus is receiving His kingdom. Soon the process will be finished for both the dead and then the living, and He'll come to take His people home.

**"And the nations were angry, and thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that**

**thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great; and shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth. And the temple of God was opened in heaven, and there was seen in his temple the ark of his testament: and there were lightnings, and voices, and thunderings, and an earthquake, and great hail.” Revelation 11:18,19**

We see that this ‘woe’ contains something that makes the nations angry; what would do that? In the first two ‘woes’ we see the forces of Islam striking suddenly, without warning, and in the 2<sup>nd</sup> woe they had explosives and were led by their ‘heads and their tails’. (see chapter 9) On Sept. 11, 2001, we saw Islam strike suddenly, without warning, with explosives, and still led by their ‘heads’ and their ‘tails’, this time against America. Why America? Well, America has made secret alliances with Papal Rome, and worked together with her secretly to bring down the communist nation of the Soviet Union in 1989, and thus they had become the modern ‘armies of Rome’. These sudden strikes are continuing, and the nations are indeed angry.

This is not the only way that this is a ‘Woe’ to ‘Rome’. These verses show us; the dead are being judged; the saints and prophets are honored by their names being kept in the Book of Life as part of Jesus’ Kingdom. Think of the hundreds of thousands of people, tortured to death and massacred in the Dark Ages. They are placed in the list to receive their reward; Eternal Life with Jesus.

But what about those who killed them? What about those haughty church leaders who pretended to be God’s agents? This is when the hidden things of darkness are made plain. Luke 12:2 “For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known.”

Evil men have done many horrible deeds, and they thought that because the people who knew about it were all killed, that nobody could find out what they had really done. But this Woe is the time when all the records are opened on those who have pretended to be Christians, and their wicked deeds are all written there.



This writer has a photo of three skeletons that were found buried beneath the hall floor of a Cathedral in Russia. They were found when the authorities demolished this old building to build a nuclear power plant. It looks like it was a young boy and his parents laid out there. There were hundreds of hidden skeletons in this old church. Who were they? Who killed them? We don't know; but the 'Watcher and the Holy One' who wrote on Belshazzar's wall knows, and it is all coming out in the Investigative Judgment.

Indeed it is a Woe on all who have done evil, while professing to belong to God. Nothing is overlooked; not even one little child who loved Jesus, and was killed by wicked people, is forgotten. All the true and faithful will receive reward, and all the false will be blotted from the Book of Life.

'And the Temple of God was opened in Heaven' and there was seen the 'Ark of His Testament'. What is this? It shows that since 1844, the message about the Sanctuary and God's Law, including the True Sabbath, has been being preached in the world. As the Judgment moves on to the living, these things will be preached with a 'Loud Cry'. Then people will choose to obey God and be sealed for His kingdom, or they will obey man's laws, honor Rome, accept the Mark of the Roman Beast, and so be blotted out of the Book of Life.

Thunderings: the loud preaching of a warning message from God.

Earthquake: a great time of war and persecution just before Jesus' return.

Great Hail: the final of the Seven last plagues.

So you see that this Woe leads to the end of the Roman power forever, and the Second Coming of Jesus to 'gather His children home'. Do you see why this is such an important time? Soon, we don't know how soon, the living will be judged. It is right upon us even now! Let us all choose to be faithful, so Jesus will be given each one of us, to be part of His Kingdom.

**REVELATION 12****The Woman & the Dragon**

**“And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars: And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered.”**  
**Revelation 12:1, 2**

Here we see a pure woman, which is a symbol of God's true people. She is 'clothed with the sun'; she has on Christ's robe of righteousness. The 'moon is under her feet'; she is standing on the promises of the Old Testament, which reflect the light of Jesus. 'Upon her head a crown of twelve stars'; the twelve apostles of the New Testament.

She was expecting a baby. Down through the ages, the true people of God looked for the coming of Jesus, and longed for this to happen. He was the 'Desire of Ages'; the 'Desire of Women'. Old Testament mothers longed to be the one chosen to bear the Messiah.

**“And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.”**  
**Revelation 12:3, 4**

Here is an interesting symbol showing that Satan took one third of the angels of heaven, and cast them down with himself, when he fell into sin. It shows us that Satan was just waiting for Jesus to come to earth, so he could try and devour Him.

**“And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.”** **Revelation 12:5**

We can be so glad that the old dragon, Satan, was not able to eat up Jesus. Jesus defeated Satan, and now shares the throne of the universe. The Dragon also is a symbol of the power of Rome, which Satan worked through to try and

kill Jesus, even when He was just a baby. This chapter goes back and forth between what the Pure Woman is doing, and what the Cruel Dragon is doing.

### 1260 DAY/ YEARS

**“And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days.” Revelation 12:6**

Here again we see the 1260 year prophecy. This is so important for us to understand, that Jesus repeated it in the prophecies of Daniel and John, seven different times. This is the terrible time that millions of true believers died for their faith during the Dark Ages of Rome’s persecution. When Satan worked through the power of Rome, it is also called the ‘dragon’ and the ‘serpent’.

**“And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.” Revelation 12:7-9.**

These verses take us back to the rebellion of Lucifer in heaven, and tell how he was cast out by ‘Michael’, (meaning ‘Who is like God?’) and the scriptures indicate that this is Jesus, when shown in His conflicts with Satan. It also tells us what happened, after Satan had done all he could to hurt and attack Jesus, when He was here on earth, and how he actually got the wicked church leaders, to use the dragon power of Rome to kill Him.

The loyal angels were amazed when they saw the terrible cruelty of Satan in how he treated Jesus. He was proven to be wicked in their eyes forever more. Never again would any of them believe Satan’s lies about God. They had seen what Satan’s ideas really were made of.

**“And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.**

**And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.” Revelation 12:10, 11**

These are further thoughts about the final victory of Jesus over Satan. Did you know that when you, or anybody that claims to be a Christian, does selfish, sinful deeds, Satan accuses them to the holy angels and to Jesus? Yes, he says things like: “See there is John or Sue, and they claim to belong to You, and just look how they act. It didn’t do You any good to die for them. They are selfish and sinful and should be destroyed.”

But over in Zechariah 3, we see a story of what Jesus does for His faithful, repenting people. He washes away their past sins with His blood, and He gives them His own clean robe of righteousness. He tells Satan, “I died for Sue and John. I paid with My blood for the sins they did. They are sorry for their sins and have chosen to let Me take those sins away out of their lives, and to be like Me.”

That is how the redeemed overcome Satan, ‘by the blood of the Lamb’. The word of their testimony means they are not ashamed to talk about what Jesus has done for them, and they stand true to His Word.

‘They loved not their lives unto the death’. ‘The Death’, here means a martyr’s death. This means that though these people liked to live as much as any of us do, they would not deny Jesus to save their lives. When the judges and church leaders yelled at them, ‘Will you stop believing in the Bible and obey us?’ They said; “No, we will be faithful to the Bible”.

Jesus’ power is what can overcome sin in our lives and His power gives us the courage to stand for the truth; even to ‘the Death’.

**“Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea. for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time. And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child.” Revelation 12:12, 13.**

We truly live in the days when the ‘devil has great wrath’, because he knows that his time is getting shorter every day. His only delight is in cruelty, and seeking to deceive and persecute anyone who truly belongs to Jesus, and seeks to keep His commandments.

**“And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent. And the serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away of the flood. And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which the dragon cast out of his mouth.” Revelation 12:14-16**

Here we see more details, and another of the 1260 year prophecies. It shows how the True Church had to hide in the wilderness, while the false power ruled the world from Rome. The ‘serpent’, this wicked power, cast out water like a flood to destroy the woman. Time after time huge armies were sent to attack the true believers where they hid in the little-known places of the world, in mountains, and wilderness areas. The ‘floods’ that came out of the serpent’s ‘mouth’ also refer to laws and decrees, poured out from the Roman powers against these true Bible believers.

This is how the ‘earth helped’ her by swallowing up the floods of water; it meant that the wilderness areas allowed at least some of the true people of God to manage to survive the persecution. Also it refers to the opening up of the mostly unpopulated Americas at that time, where many persecuted people were able to flee away from the Roman power, and be safe to practice their true Bible faith. How thrilling to see all this history written down before any of it had happened.

**“And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.” Revelation 12:17**

Ever since Satan failed to get Jesus to disobey God’s

laws when He was on this earth, he has been shown to be a liar and a murderer. All of heaven and the unfallen worlds are fully convinced that his charges against God's government are false. They are not fooled by him any more.

But the battle is still going on here; because humans are still fooled by Satan's lies, and most of them still want to follow him, and enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season. Satan has 'great wrath', because he knows his days are numbered by the same Holy Power that said to Belshazzar, 'thou art numbered and found wanting'.

Even so, he wants to destroy as many people as he possibly can. Why doesn't he just quit? Well, for one thing, he can't; his own sinful, selfish heart drives him on and on in wickedness and cruelty. His hatred of Jesus and God's Law, also causes him to seek to hurt the dear Savior by getting people to reject the Plan of Salvation provided for them at such cost. He has 'great wrath' against everybody in the world, but especially against a certain group, he is 'wroth' super-mad. Who are they?

They are the 'remnant' of the pure woman's seed; 'Those who keep the Commandments and have the Faith of Jesus'. Down through the ages there have always been at least a small group, somewhere, of true and faithful ones clinging to precious truth from the pure Word of God; clinging to the precious Law of God; clinging to their dear Savior's promises; trusting in the power of His Blood for victory over every sin. Led by the Holy 'Spirit of Prophecy' on and on they have come down the bloodstained path of history.

Paul describes them; "And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover of bonds and imprisonment: They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented; (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth. And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise: God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made

perfect.” Hebrews 11:37-40

In the last days the ‘remnant’; the last tattered remains of these faithful ones; will stand against the Dragon, the Beast and the False Prophet. They will be like those who went before them. They will cling to the inspired Word of God. They will trust in the promises and Blood of Jesus. They will stand for truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth, even if it costs their lives. And they will win by the Blood of the Lamb!

### **EARTH’S HEROES**

“They are coming this way” he said,—the angel who kept the gate,—  
“They enter the city here. Would you see their cohorts? Wait.  
Within is a great feast spread, and the air with music stirs;  
For the King himself shall sit this day with the banqueters.”

The heroes of earth. For these, in their march up the aisles of palm,  
I would wait: from within came forth the surge of a swelling psalm.  
At thought of the nearing hosts, I shrank in awesome dread—  
Chief captains and mighty men, who should pass with their martial tread.

Then, slowly, out of the mists up the way whence I looked to see,  
With glory along their crests, and light on their panoply,  
The warriors, splendor-shod, with whose names Time’s annals ring —  
Came a bank of pilgrims; worn as from years of journeying.

Slowly, with halting steps, they come; their unsandaled feet—  
Are bruised by jagged stones, are scorched by the desert’s heat;  
Their faces are white, and lined with vigil and patient pain;  
Their forms are beaten and marred by the storm and the hurricane;

But the stronger uphold the week—and their leader upholds a cross.  
Impatient, I look away down the slopes where the palm plumes toss;  
Impatient, I turn to him, the angel who keeps the gate,—  
“But the heroes? Where are they, for whom you bade me wait?”

For answer, the gate swings wide, and dawn streams out on the night;  
And that way-worn band pass through, their raiment white as the light.  
For answer, I hear a voice from the heart of the halos say,  
While the veiled angel bows: “Earth’s heroes? These are they.”  
Emma Herrick Weed.

ONLY  
AUTHORITY  
CHRIST AND HIS WORD



INDIVIDUAL BELIEVERS  
All ye are Brethren!



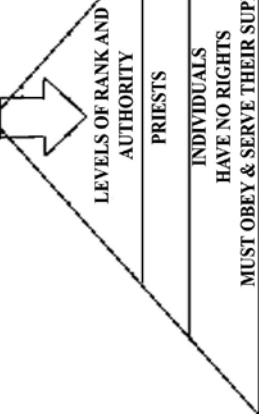
PASTORS, TEACHERS, PREACHERS  
ALL ARE SERVANTS

## God's Plan:

Each individual has equal, unalienable rights and is accountable only to GOD. He is free to study and decide for himself what is his duty to God. Ministers serve the believers. Only God's Word has authority.

## UNDERSTANDING HIERARCHY

AUTHORITY FROM GOD  
*PRESUMED* Turned over to the  
CHURCH  
POPE  
ABSOLUTE INFALLIBLE  
AUTHORITY



## Satan's Plan:

Individuals have no rights at all, except what the higher levels see fit to grant them. Each level is answerable to the one above it. Satan only needs to control the top—and he has all!



*REVELATION 13*

## **The Beast, the Image, & the Mark**

**“And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy. And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.” Revelation 13:1, 2.**

Here comes a great beast up out of the water. Remember when Daniel saw beasts coming out of the water? We are continuing on from Daniel’s prophecies here in the book of Revelation.

Take a good look at this beast; he has parts of all the other beasts: ‘Like unto a leopard’ Greece; ‘Feet as a bear’ Medo-Persia; ‘Mouth of a lion’ Babylon; ‘Dragon gave him his seat, power, and authority’ Pagan Rome and also Satan. Rome has beliefs and practices that come from each of these Pagan powers.

Notice also where John is situated in this vision; he is on the land, and he looks behind him to the sea, and he sees this beast. As he sees the parts of the beast, we notice that he is looking back in time at the same series of beasts that Daniel in chapter 7 was looking forward at. John sees first the ten horns; the ten kingdoms and the blasphemous beast: Rome, then the leopard: Greece, then the bear: Medo-Pesia, then the lion: Babylon; and the ‘earth’ is before him from whence will rise the two-horned beast.

This beast is coming up out of the ‘sea’; which means it comes to power in a well-populated area. It has ten horns and ten crowns, so we know it is in the area that once was ruled by the Roman Empire, which was broken up into ten parts. And it has seven heads, three of the original nations that took over the Roman Empire were destroyed, which leaves seven heads left of the ten nations.

On these heads we see the name of blasphemy; by claiming to be God on earth; by claiming to have power to

forgive sins; by claiming to change God's law; and many other ways, this Roman beast is a blasphemous beast and the heads, (rulers and nations) by accepting and honoring this power, also bring blasphemy on themselves.

**“And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast.” Revelation 13:3**

The deadly wound to this Papal beast was given in 1798, when Napoleon sent his general, Berthier, into Rome to remove the pope from power and throw him into prison. He died in captivity, and for two years there was no pope. It seemed for a brief time that the papacy was dead forever. The original wording for ‘wounded’ actual means ‘killed’, it was ‘killed to death’.

It is very interesting that the order to remove the pope was given more than a year before 1798, but somehow, it just didn't get done until 1798. We know why, don't we? Because the prophecies said he would rule for 1260 years, not 1259. God's word never fails.

As soon as another pope was placed on the throne, this power began to work to ‘heal its deadly wound’. The text says it will be healed. What has to happen before the wound is healed? Well, first we have to look at what ended at the close of the 1260 years. The Roman church did not cease to exist, and shortly after, a new pope was elected; was the wound healed then?

No, it wasn't; you see, the Beast power is a combination of church and civil government. The Beast power was when the church had full control to use the civil government, to force people to obey it, and to persecute dissenters. After 1798 the Roman church continued as a religion, but it no longer had power to rule the governments and force them to work for it. It is trying hard to get this power back; and it is getting very close to it.

**All the world wonders after the Beast.**

Do you see people all excited whenever the Pope comes to visit? Do you see people, even non-Catholics, admiring him? When we try to show the world what this power is

intending to do, people get angry at us; the world is ‘wondering after him’.

**“And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months. And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.” Revelation 13:4-6.**

Prophecies are like a puzzle; God gives us clues, and when we put them together, carefully following what the Bible says the clues mean; we can see what He is telling us. These verses give some more clues.

They worshipped the ‘dragon’; Pagan leaders were worshipped as gods. Their head priest was called Pontifex Maximus, the ‘Great Bridge Builder’. This name was passed on to the Roman emperors and later, when one of the Roman Emperors decided that he did not feel right to take this title, as it claimed control of the souls of men in life and in death, the Bishop of Rome snapped it up and the popes have been called ‘Pontiffs’ ever since. Also Satan, who is also the Dragon, is worshipped either directly or indirectly by all Pagan religions. So we see a power that had been worshipped, giving authority to another power, which is also worshipped, that is Papal Rome.

‘Who is like unto the beast’? The kings of Europe during the Dark Ages well knew the power of the Papacy; they were afraid to oppose her. In fact, once, when a king had offended the pope, the poor king stood barefoot and hatless for days outside the pope’s palace in the winter-time, so he could beg forgiveness from the proud pontiff. How different from the meek and lowly Jesus, Who even washed the feet of Judas.

**“And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months. And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his**

**tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.” Revelation 13:5, 6.**

‘Given unto him...A mouth speaking blasphemies’; to have a ‘mouth’ in prophecy, means to be able to pass laws. The papal power passed many wicked and blasphemous laws during her time ruling the world. Ordering the Bible to be burned, and anyone who loved it to be burned also, was one of these laws.

‘Forty and two months’; this is another reference to the 1260 year prophecy.

He ‘blasphemes God’s name’; In the Bible, God’s Name represents His character; what He is really like. The Papacy, through her ideas of purgatory and eternal hell fire, made millions look upon God as a monster, instead of the loving Father He really is.

‘God’s Tabernacle’; By setting up human priests, and telling everyone they could only be saved through the church and its ceremonies, Rome spoke against the ministry of Jesus for us in the Heavenly Sanctuary. The church leaders stood like a wall, stopping the people from coming straight to Jesus.

‘Them that dwell in heaven’; there are so many weird and wicked stories told to the people by the Roman church, that say false things about angels, Jesus, God, the Holy Spirit, and so on. They also tell the people, that all these old dead church leaders, are now ‘saints’ in heaven, and the people should pray to them. To pray to the dead in any form, or offer gifts to them, is to worship demons. “For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not any thing, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten.” Ecclesiastes 9:5.

**“And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations. And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. If any man have an ear, let him hear. He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience**

**and the faith of the saints.” Revelation 13:7-10**

Here again we have more clues, so many in fact that there really is not *any* other power on earth that this can be, but Papal Rome. Here again we see it persecuting and killing the true followers of Jesus during the 1260 years of rule.

‘Power was given him’; during the 1260 years, this wicked power was allowed to pretty much do what it wanted to do. Satan can never say to God and the universe that his religion would have worked, but God didn’t give him a chance to prove it. No indeed, for 1260 years that religion ruled and the effects on the world, and on people and nations are written in history, and in the books of heaven with letters of blood.

Then we are told that all on earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the Book of Life. This is very solemn; unless you have really given your whole heart to Jesus and serve Him only, you *will* end up worshipping the Beast; there is no other choice. It is now that we better decide for the right; the time will come later that we will no longer have the choice.

**‘Captivity and sword’**

Here is a warning from God; too bad the haughty popes did not spend much time reading the Bible, they could have been warned what would happen to them if they kept doing their wicked and cruel deeds.

This is also giving us more clues; for centuries, Rome threw the people of God into prisons, she sent armies with swords to kill them and drove them into hidden places of the earth. Then in 1798, armies were sent against her, and a military power threw the pope into prison. In the upheavals during the French Revolution, the Roman priests and leaders were slaughtered by the people, just as formerly the church had slaughtered God’s children.

The people of God did read the Bible, during those 1260 years of cruel persecution; many were encouraged by God’s promise that the persecuting power would have an end. This did give them patience and faith.

**“And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth;**

**and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.”  
Revelation 13:11**

Here comes another Beast. But this time it comes out of the ‘earth’. Now if the ‘seas’ mean areas where there are lots of people, ‘earth’ would mean where there were not many people. Did a new power arise near the close of the 1260 years, around 1798, in areas where there was not many people?

Yes, it certainly did; and where these other beasts arose by way of the ‘winds’; that is with war and strife, this power just quietly arose and grew in the late 1700s. It is the United States of America.

‘It had two horns, like a lamb’; these horns were the secret of his power and glory and represented the principles of civil and religious liberty. ‘Republicanism and Protestantism’ also mean the same idea. It means that the power of church and state are separate powers; the church is not able to use the state to enforce her decrees, and the state is not allowed to interfere with the free exercise of conscientious worship. It is like a lamb, this means it is gentle, not harmful and cruel as the other beasts.

Strangely enough, it is these very same two horns, civil and religious freedom, that keep the wounded head on the leopard-like beast from healing; and it still isn’t completely healed to this day; but soon will be. How do these horns do this? Well, the concept that every man has a right to freedom, and to be able to exercise his religious beliefs freely without hassle, was a very new idea in the world in the late 1700s; but it is just taken for granted now, because it has spread throughout the world. This belief in the rightful freedom of man, prevents the Roman beast from starting to slaughter heretics again as it would like to.

Instead it has to pretend to go along with the ‘freedom’ idea, and it yells the loudest about freedom, when its own ‘rights’ are interfered with. But it really hates this idea that people should be free to serve God, or not serve Him as they see fit. During the Dark Ages, people accepted the idea that popes and kings had the ‘Divine Right’ to force

people to do whatever they wanted them to. No one ever thought to question this, but now, because of the two horns of the American Lamb-like Beast, the world sees things differently.

In order to come back into the despotic power she had before in the Middle Ages, the Roman power has to play a very different game of strategy.

### **‘As a Dragon’**

We see that something terrible happens. This helpful, gentle beast, with its amazing two horns, begins to ‘speak as a dragon’. To ‘speak’ means to pass laws, so this power will eventually pass laws like a dragon; a persecuting power. Then its two horns will represent military and economic power, which it will use against those who refuse to obey it.

**“And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.” Revelation 13:12**

Did you know that the power that the Dragon represented, besides Satan, was Pagan Rome? That power, under Constantine, passed the world’s first Sunday-laws. Yes indeed, in the 300s, before Papal Rome had received the seat and authority from the dragon, Pagan Rome passed six Sunday Laws after Constantine declared himself to be a ‘Christian’. When the Lamb-like beast speaks ‘like the dragon’ it will pass laws to force all to keep the Sunday also.

**“And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men,” Revelation 13:13.**

Now we see this lamb-beast working to force people to worship the leopard-beast of Rome. It does this by passing laws which honor Rome; such as forcing people to worship on the Sunday, which Rome claims is its ‘mark’ of authority.

This lamb/dragon power does great wonders; the USA has great technology and does wonders in the use of atomic power and so on. Also there are many people arising that are performing miracles by means of demon spirits; but the people think the power is from God.

It is interesting that the USA is promoting the ideas of evolution and rejection of the Biblical record of Genesis throughout the world, while at the same time pointing to its scientific progress as evidence that she is right about this. America's brand of 'Protestantism' is a mixture of evolution, pantheism, spiritism, humanism and situation ethics. This is why the lamb-like beast is also the 'false prophet'.

How do we know for sure the power behind these miracles is demonic? Well, the Bible tells us "if they speak not according to this Word, there is *no* light in them". Isaiah 8:20. When these 'miracle workers' tell people to keep the Sunday, and that they don't need to keep God's Ten Commandments, they show they are from the darkness.

Many people think when anything happens that looks like a miracle, it has to be God who is doing it. Sadly they don't read their Bibles; for we are told clearly that in the last days miracles are going to be the sign of the false power, that seeks to force all to receive the Mark of the Beast.

**"And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live." Revelation 13:14.**

These miracles and deceptive philosophy are what will convince many people that this movement is right and they will follow it blindly, and hate all who speak against it, and who seek to show from the Bible where it is wrong. If you get people coming to you all excited, telling you about miracles; watch out. There will be true miracles, but when people do miracles, and then tell you that God's law has been changed, or doesn't matter, or that we can't keep it anyway, or we have to keep sinning until Jesus comes, they are doing the devil's work whether they know it or not.

**"And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed." Revelation 13:15.**

So here we see this power, now speaking as a dragon,



and it is saying to all the world, "Let's make something that is a copy of the beast that was wounded; let's make a copy of the Papacy." What would be a copy, 'image', of the Papal Beast? It would be when the USA starts to use civil government power and laws, to force people to obey religious laws, just like Rome did in the 1260 years.

Can USA tell the world what to do? We see many examples lately that it is starting to do exactly that. Since Sept. 11, 2001, USA has been rising up and talking more proudly than ever before; just like the arrogant Papal Beast before it, it is exulting itself. Now it is getting ready to push its weight around, and it has a lot of weight.

It is going to pass laws to force all people to not only keep Sunday, but also to break the seventh day Sabbath of the Lord. And those who won't obey them, will not be able to buy or sell. This is the very method that USA has been using for many years now, against countries it doesn't like; it makes 'economic sanctions' and stops them from buying and selling, until they have to 'give in'.

But God's true people won't 'give in'. God helps them and they stand firm for His Sabbath. So then the lamb/dragon says they are all to die. A death decree is passed saying that on a certain day, all the Sabbath keepers are to be killed. At that time, God closes probation on this earth and the plagues begin to fall on the wicked.

Always remember, God's obedient people have nothing to fear as He will help them and protect them. Even those who die as martyrs, will be given all the courage and help they need, right when they need it. Jesus will hold their hand.

**"And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name." Revelation 13:16**

What a lot of funny ideas people have about this 'mark' on the hand or forehead. It is no mystery; the Mark of Rome's authority is Sunday-keeping enforced by law.

This is the 'Mark' of the leopard-like 'beast'. People get it in their hand when they agree to obey the power, not because they believe in it, but just so they can buy and sell and not be persecuted. They get it in their forehead when they really believe in it, because of all the miracles Satan is doing to fool them. It isn't a visible mark, but rather a choice they make.

**"And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name." Revelation 13:17.**

Notice the three groups, those who have the 'mark'; that means those who keep Sunday, the Protestants; those who have the 'name of the beast', the Roman Catholics; and those who have the 'number of the beast's name, 666'; this represents the pagan religions and the new age movement, all of which have the number 666 somewhere in their ceremonies or worship. All three unite to persecute the true Sabbath keepers.

**"Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six." Revelation 13:18**

Now here we see the famous number 666; many people get mixed up and think that 666 is the 'Mark' of the Beast but it isn't, it is another clue. Here is how it works:

In Latin, the old Roman language also used by the Papacy, some letters are also used as numbers. This way a person's name can often have a number by adding up what the letter-numbers mean. A documented Roman Catholic source states: "The letters inscribed in the Pope's miter are these 'VICARIUS FILII DEI', which is the Latin for 'VICAR OF THE SON OF GOD.' Catholics hold that the church, which is a visible society, must have a visible head...., [the pope] as head of the church, was given the title, 'VICAR OF CHRIST'."

Our Sunday Visitor, (Catholic Weekly) "Bureau of information," Huntington, Ind., April 18, 1915.

When you take the letters that are also numbers in this name, and add them up it comes to 666.

V-5, I-1, C-100, A-0, R-0, I-1, U-5, S-0 = 112

F-0, I-1, L-50, I-1, I-1 = 53

D-500, E-0, I-1=501

112 + 53 + 501= 666

A 'vicar' is someone who takes another's place, having the same authority as that person. Vicar of the Son of God, means he takes the Son of God's place and claims the same authority. In Greek the word 'ANTE' or ANTI means 'to take the place of'. So 'Antichrist' is not someone who is against Christ, or a non-Christian power, it really refers to someone who claims to 'take the place of' Christ; or to stand in His place; that is exactly what the Roman power claims to do.

There are many other titles used by the Roman power that also add up to 666. In fact it is interesting that if you add up the Latin numeric letters that are also numerals you get 666: I=1; V=5; X=10; L=50; C=100; D=500. Add it up for yourself. The number 6 and the triple 6 have deep significance in all 'Mystery' religions.

## REVELATION 14

### Three Angels' Messages

**"And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father's name written in their foreheads. And I heard a voice from heaven, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder: and I heard the voice of harpers harping with their harps: And they sung as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth."**  
**Revelation 14:1-3.**

It is interesting that often before a new prophecy scene is shown in Revelation, we are given a glimpse of the time when all the faithful will be in heaven, and how happy they will be, singing and shouting praises to Jesus, as they realize their trials are over and they have won the victory through

the Faith of Jesus & the power of the Blood of the Lamb.

So here we see a special group, the 144,000. They are the faithful remnant who will stand through the times of trouble and live to see Jesus come in the clouds and go home with Him without ever dying. These are the 'First-fruits' we learned about earlier. There will also be many, many more people who will be raised from the dead and go home to heaven.

It tells us that they 'sing a new song'. In prophecy a 'new song' means that they have had a special experience. That's why nobody else can learn this 'new song', because nobody else has had an experience quite like this group.

They have passed through the time of trouble such as never was since there was a nation; they have endured the distress of the time of Jacob's trouble; they have lived through the time when Jesus was no longer pleading for sinners in the heavenly sanctuary; and have seen the terrible seven last plagues fall on the earth.

They have seen famine and war and sickness hit the earth like never before. They have seen what happens to men when the Holy Spirit leaves them forever, and they are left completely controlled by Satan. They then will look and act like demons.

During this time, these living, faithful ones will have Jesus in their hearts. They will act and think like Him. They will have the Holy Spirit and holy angels with them to protect and strengthen them through this time, but the wicked will have nothing. They refused all efforts by God to save them, so they are left to the rule of Satan, which they chose to have.

Why do these things have to happen? Well, it is so the whole universe will see what sin really is, and what it results in. Never again will anyone think that God's Law should be thrown away.

I know of people who have stopped hearing the truth, because the time of trouble, and things like that made them feel afraid, and they didn't want to think about it. But God's true people will have all the help and protection they will

need at this time. The wicked will have nothing. Those people are part of what is meant by the stone ‘cut out without hands’ in Daniel 2. They come into such a close relationship with God, that His Holy Spirit is their teacher and guide.

**“These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb. And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God.” Revelation 14:4, 5**

Now here in these verses we have some important clues about what the faithful are going to do. It says they are ‘not defiled with women’. In prophecy a ‘women’ is a church, but this says women, plural. In our day we are seeing churches from all over the world gathering together, claiming to worship God, but really seeking to force people to worship man, and obey traditions, councils, man’s decrees, priests and pastors instead of obeying God’s Word. We have the World Council of Churches and other groups that try to get everyone to follow one set of ideas, and these ideas actually come from the Roman church, and they got them from paganism. They are not God’s truths, and to obey them, we must disobey God.

The true and faithful ones will have to leave all church tradition and the rules of men, and stand faithful only to Jesus and His Holy Word. They will say to these ‘churches’ that try and force people to obey man’s laws, “Show us from the Bible where we are wrong and we will obey the Bible.” They will say like Peter, “We must obey God rather than man.”

They ‘follow the Lamb’, wherever He goes. This means that no matter what troubles result from obeying God’s Word, and keeping His holy Sabbath day, these wise virgins obey God faithfully. It is in His strength they have gotten the victory over all their sins, and now in His strength they stay faithful to the end.

‘In their mouth was found no guile’. Guile, means to lie, or be dishonest. It means that these people do not tell anything but the truth. They are not claiming to be good

when they really are doing wrong. They are not hypocrites.

This verse proves to be in error, those who try and tell us that God's people don't have to overcome and stop sinning, and they will still be sinning right up to when Jesus comes. The true people of God will have the character of Jesus and act just like He did. They will be 'without fault'. Jesus needs people who choose to really live like He did; in total obedience to God's Law.

### 1st

**And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters. Revelation 14:6, 7.**

Here comes the first angel and his message. This message went out with great strength through the earth in the early 1800s and especially in 1843-1844. The long time prophecy, found in Daniel 8:14 was coming to it's end and the Holy Spirit stirred up deep interest all over the world. It is still going out, as each angel adds his message to the messages of the ones before him. So at the end, three messages are going out, and later we will learn that a fourth one joins the three.

What does this message tell us in brief? Put God first in our lives; Honor God above men; Honor Him as Creator. Honor Him as Redeemer. Fear Him and obey Him. Keep all His commandments including the fourth. Did you know that the fourth commandment is the only one that tells Who God is? And why He has authority? It tells us why we should obey Him.

This message about the judgment, the Law of God and how He is the Creator of all things, is to go to all the earth. Everybody is to hear about it, and make their choice; to worship and obey God, or to keep right on doing whatever they feel like, and obeying their own made up rules. It is sad that most people will refuse to listen to God and truly

worship Him, but at the same time they will claim they *are* worshipping God.

Each one of us has to decide what we will do; will we obey God and keep His commandments or not? Remember the 144,000 who are ‘without fault’? They are the ones who choose to obey and Jesus gives them the power to do it. In different places in the Bible, God tells us He created all things and this is the reason He, and He alone is the only real God there is.

## **2nd**

**“And there followed another angel saying “Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.” Revelation 13:8**

In 1843 and 1844 especially, the message was linked with the cry; “Behold the Bridegroom cometh, Go ye out to meet Him.” It went with great power. On October 22, 1844, the prophecy of the 2300 days would come to its close, marking the start of God’s investigative judgment, where all who have ever claimed to serve God will have their life records examined to see if they will be taken home when Jesus appears.

These messages set off a chain of reactions. People began to show their true colors. Did they really love Jesus and long for Him to return? Or were they more in love with worldly pleasure?

Those who were teaching about the coming of Jesus, became known as ‘Adventists’. As these ‘Adventist’ preachers put forth the warning, all over the world churches at first revived and came alive, but then a division occurred. Those who wanted to see Jesus come, became more godly in their lives, and those who wanted a life of worldly pleasure, became more worldly. Then the worldly ones began to hate the godly ones. This is the way it always is in this sinful world. This is the work of the ‘Everlasting Gospel’.

Soon churches were closing their doors to the Advent Message. In 1842 a tremendous change took place. The popular churches began to mock the message of the proph-

ecy of Daniel 8:14. Then they began holding big feasts and entertainments at which the message and the messengers were made fun of. Then solemnly the 2nd angel's message went forward: 'Babylon, the proud, worldly churches, have fallen.' It was added to the 1st angel's message in the summer of 1843, and was sounded especially in America.

This 'Fall' has kept on going, as the churches today are more interested in entertainment and feasting than repentance and obedience to God. It includes all churches, and this is why the 144,000 will not be found obeying any of those man-made organizations that are showing by their lives that they are lovers of pleasure more than lovers of God. Instead, they will 'Come out', by following the Word of God faithfully.

This message will be repeated in our day as shown in Revelation 18:2. This time it will be warning all to come out before it is too late.

Now new light was to come as Jesus had entered the Most Holy Place in the heavenly sanctuary to carry out the 'Investigative Judgment'. The 3rd angel took flight:

### 3rd

**"And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, if any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day or night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name." Revelation 14:9-11.**

Any situation that would cause a God of Love to give a warning like that, must be taken seriously. We urge you not to rest until you understand what is involved, because the Time is upon us. This is perhaps the most solemn warning in the entire Bible. Surely it is serious, and all people must be interested in what it means, because it effects us all.



As the Most Holy Place in heaven was opened in 1844 at the end of the 2300 days, God's Ten Commandment Law was revealed more clearly, and students of the Bible found that they had been breaking the fourth commandment and didn't know it. Attention was brought to the seventh day Sabbath all over the world. This was the third angel's message beginning.

It is most interesting that each church had its attention drawn to the Sabbath question in the mid 1800s. From Catholic Priests to Baptists ministers, in each denomination, someone arose to proclaim that the Sunday was not the Bible Sabbath. Councils were held, and in each case, although some individuals chose to keep the Bible Sabbath, the churches decided to stick to their traditions.

This is part of the continued 'Fall of Babylon' and if you study the history of these churches after they rejected the Sabbath, they became even more worldly in their practices. They also do not have the blessing of the Holy Spirit to help them correctly understand prophecy. This is because as you do correctly understand it, you see that you need to obey God and keep His Sabbath, and they have already decided not to do this. So they make up weird ideas about the prophecies that sound like science-fiction movies.

The 'Mark of the Beast' is the changing of Sabbath to Sunday by the Beast power, Rome. It actually is the very thing they claim shows their 'authority' is higher than that of God's Word. Why does God tell us such terrible things will happen to those who 'receive this mark'?

Now you have to realize that God does not punish someone for breaking a law that he honestly knows nothing about, and never had a chance to learn about. The final test will be set up with two choices; obey God and keep His Seventh day Sabbath, be persecuted by man and be saved; or obey man-made laws to force people to keep Sunday, receive the seven last plagues and be lost.

It seems hard, but when you really know God and His promises, you see that He is going to take good care of all who choose to obey Him. The Beast power will not be able

to overcome them.

Remember, the Beast is not able to save anybody; it can't even save itself. The Bible tells us it will be destroyed; come to its end with none to help it. Choosing to obey man's power is to leave yourself with no help at all. Only lovers of the Truth who are willing to obey it, will understand God's Word correctly.

**"Here is the patience of the saints: here [are] they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus. And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them." Revelation 14:12, 13.**

Here is a special blessing pronounced on those who have lived in the faith of these three angel's messages. They will be raised before Jesus comes and see His coming. Christians need never fear death; especially those who have accepted this end-time message and chosen to obey it. To them death will be like taking a nap when weary, after your work is finished, and then waking up to enjoy the results of your labor.

**"And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle. And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe." Revelation 14:14, 15.**

In the last part of Revelation 14, we have another word-picture about two harvests. It is telling us what is going to be the result of this test that God sets up, to let people choose whether they will obey Him or not. Two groups are formed, first the wheat is gathered. In Matthew 13, God's true and faithful are called 'wheat'. They are prepared to go home with Him.

**"And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle. And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried**

**with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe. And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God. And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.” Revelation 14:17-20**

Then there are the grapes; what an interesting word-picture for the wicked of the earth, the ones who have decided to do what they please and refuse to obey God. They are compared to fat, purple grapes. Grapes are full of wine, and these wicked are full of the ‘wine of Babylon’, which is the false doctrines of Rome and the fallen churches. The grapes don’t go home; instead they are thrown into a winepress and crushed. This means that these wicked ones, who after God has done everything in His power to get them to decided to obey Him, still refuse and choose their own wicked ways, will be crushed and destroyed by their own wickedness and the seven last plagues.

It is most interesting that in these harvests, both the wheat and the grapes are ‘fully ripe’. This means that there is no doubt any more about who belongs to Jesus and who does not. Sometimes we see someone and we are not sure about whether he loves Jesus or not. We think that most people are basically good, but in this final harvest, the grapes will act just like Satan and the wheat will act exactly like Jesus. All can see it clearly.

The reason why so many seem to be basically good at present, is because of the grace of God in the presence of the Holy Spirit, working with all people, trying to woo them to Jesus. However, when that grace of the Holy Spirit is finally withdrawn from the earth, it will be seen that fallen man has absolutely no good in him at all.

“And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, choose you this day whom ye will serve; ... but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.” Joshua 24:15

## Do You Hear Them?

On earth's busy highways the traffic is dense.  
The trading on Wall Street is eager and tense.  
The TV is blaring, The rock bands play loud  
To the hurrying, flurrying, scurrying crowd.

Oh, money's the object, and winning's the goal.  
And nobody has any time for his soul.  
The poor man, he envies and steals from his brother.  
And the rich are as busy defrauding each other.

So love hides her face while self sits on the throne.  
And each man is occupied seeking his own.  
While dark clouds are threatening above them, unseen:  
Soon, Soon they will sweep away all the bright dream,

And far in the heavens there sounds a wild cry—  
As wide as the earth and as high as the sky—  
Swift on the winds the stern message is hurled,  
Three high-flying angels are warning the world,

The storm's mad approach meets their far-seeing eye  
And they shout out the warning to men as they fly:  
"Come and flee to the shelter: Oh, flee while ye may:  
Your last precious moments are ticking away.

"Death threatens! Why linger here in the storms path?  
Soon, Soon all will drink from the cup of God's wrath.  
Listen, Oh listen. Hush all of the noise—  
Silence the music—Lay down your bright toys.

"Soon the tempest will strike with it's death-dealing shock.  
Oh, Jesus will hide you. Then flee to the Rock!"  
The cry floats through jungles of steel and concrete.  
But the earth-ears are tuned to the rock-music beat.

Their eyes on their treasures, their hearts full of sin,  
Their ears are so deadened by earth's frantic din  
That few are the earthlings who lift up their eyes  
Or hear the wild voices that sound from the skies.

Hark! Hark! Pause and listen. Have you ears that hear?  
The voices are urgent. The message is clear.  
While mercy yet lingers respond to the cry—  
For why will you die? Oh, why will you die?

*REVELATION 15*

## Seven Vials of Wrath

**“And I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvellous, seven angels having the seven last plagues; for in them is filled up the wrath of God. And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God. And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints. Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest. Revelation 15:1-4**

Chapter 15 opens with a quick glance at seven angels carrying the seven last plagues. But then it quickly shows us again a picture of the joyful ones around the throne, who have won the victory over evil through the power of Jesus.

Whenever there is something sad that has to be told, our loving Jesus always gives us first, a view of something happy to encourage us. It is a good idea that if we have to show anyone a mistake they have made, or some other negative thing, that we first say something kind and cheering to them.

Here we see the saved ones again, all joyful before God’s throne, and they are all declaring something very important. They are singing the song of Moses, and the Lamb. This is a song about unselfish love that wins the victory over evil by humble self-sacrifice; the song of people who have learned to love as Jesus loved.

They are also saying that God is fair and good, even though we are going to see some terrible things happen in the next few chapters of Revelation, things that will and must take place after the close of probation for this wicked world, still it is the love, mercy and justice of our loving Father in heaven that makes these things needful. They are

agreeing with what God has to do, even though it is sad and terrible.

**“And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened: And the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles. And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of God, who liveth for ever and ever.” Revelation 15:5-7**

Then we see the temple opened and out of it come seven angels. They are dressed in white linen, which shows they are pure and holy, like Jesus. One of the four beasts gives each angel a golden vial, which is ‘full of the wrath of God’. Remember that these ‘beasts’ represent some of the people who have been saved.

**“And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled.” Revelation 15:8**

What a very sad thing that our loving God, who has patience, unselfishness and kindness beyond anything we can even imagine; this wonderful Being who tells us His mercy is new every morning; has to finally pour out wrath on those He has done everything to save, but who have despised all His goodness and are determined to kill His faithful children.

How cruel and wicked it is to wear out the patience of One so good. But still, it isn't a case of God finally losing His temper, Oh, no indeed. It is necessary for the good of others that these terrible plagues have to fall on the wicked world. There are several reasons for them. One is that these wicked ones are determined to murder all of God's faithful children and blot them from the earth. He will not allow this to happen.

Another reason is to show to the universe that nothing God could do, would ever get these rebels to change. No matter what, they will curse God and still go on being wicked and cruel.

The last verse of chapter 15 tells us that nobody is in the heavenly sanctuary at this time. Probation has closed forever on the earth. The mercy and love, which for all the years of earth's history, has been poured out for people through Jesus, has finally ended. The world is left to its chosen ways, while the faithful ones are surrounded by heavenly angels and protected.

Oh, readers; Jesus, our Great High Priest is still pleading at present in the Most Holy Place of the Heavenly Sanctuary. The Day of Atonement judgment is going on. How soon all of our names will come up, we don't know, but signs are all around us that the mercy of God will soon cease, and our probation will close forever.

Jesus, as our High Priest has all power in Heaven and Earth. Anything we need to be able to overcome sin, and have a character like His and be saved, is available to us now. Do not wait or put it off. Do not listen to those who say all you need is to believe; Remember the Bible says in the Letters to the churches, (Revelation 2-3) They that overcome will receive the promises; not just they who believe. And we can overcome, we must! But Jesus is there to give us the victory He has already won for us. His victory enables us to live a life like Jesus lived, in the power that He gives us.

We have to want that sinless life, we have to choose to have it. If we want to give Jesus lip-service while we still cling to our darling sins, we will be lost. Those who are saved at last will hate sin just as God hates it. They will have rejected all of its so-called pleasures and see it for the hideous, cruel thing that it is.

**“And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares. For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.”**  
**Luke 21:34-36.**

**REVELATION 16****Seven Last Plagues**

**“And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth.” Revelation 16:1.**

Here we are shown the terrible seven last plagues that will fall on the wicked inhabitants of this world who are determined to destroy God’s waiting, faithful children. Who is this ‘Great Voice’ that speaks here from the Temple in Heaven? It is God the Father; because at this time Jesus has finished His work of interceding for mankind and probation is closed.

Jesus will not leave the Most Holy Place until every case is decided either for salvation or destruction. The wrath of God can not come until Jesus finishes His work in the Most Holy Place. Then Jesus will step out from between the Father and men, and God will keep silence no longer, but pour out His wrath on those who have rejected His truth.

When our High Priest has finished His work in the sanctuary, He will stand up, put on the garments of vengeance, and then the seven last plagues will be poured out.

The four angels hold the four winds until Jesus’ work is done in the sanctuary, and then will come the seven last plagues.

**#1**

**“And the first angel went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.” Revelation 16:2.**

The first plague is a terrible and painful kind of sore that comes on the people, and no one can find a cure for it. Can you imagine sores all over your body. Notice, these gnawing, painful sores will afflict only those who have the mark of the beast and worship his image.

People by the thousands who have received the ‘mark’ for the purpose of saving their jobs and the comforts of life now find that their comfort is gone.



Instead of causing them to repent, and pray to God for forgiveness, these terrible sores only cause them to 'blaspheme God' and 'gnaw their tongues for pain.' God knows that if He gave them a million years more, they wouldn't change.

Not everyone will get these awful sores. Those who so lately have been persecuted and mocked, are now safe. Angels of God protect them. They have loved and been obedient to their Lord, even unto death, and now Jesus is very close to them. Though they'll be sentenced to death, God's people will not die. Jesus will interpose to save them. While the wicked are perishing with pestilence and famine, God's people are sheltered in His hand.

### **#2**

**"And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea." Revelation 15:3.**

The second plague causes the water of the oceans to change into something that is like the blood of a dead man.

Those who have hated God's people have tried to shed their blood, and now they are given blood; more than they know what to do with.

### **#3**

**"And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood." Revelation 15:4.**

The third plague causes the rivers and fountains of water to all become like blood. This is interesting, as the angel here says that this is only fair. They deserve it, in other words.

**"And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy. And I heard another out of the altar say, Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are thy judgments." Revelation 15:5-7.**

All the beings of the universe as well as the angels declare that they deserve just what they are getting. One voice

is the angel from heaven and the other voice comes from the altar, which represents the saved on earth. As terrible as these judgments are, they are righteous. You see, God is not an arbitrary tyrant. He moves ahead with His judgments only as fast as his created children are able to understand them and approve of them.

#### #4

**“And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire. And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give Him glory.” Revelation 16:8, 9.**

The fourth plague causes the sun to become so hot that it scorches people. This is also a very fair judgment, because these people are exalting sun-worship and seeking to force all to worship the ‘Sun-day’; so God gives them what they want, lots of sun.

Many who have worked miracles and done wonderful works, have trampled on God’s Sabbath and persecuted those who honored it. They’ve felt secure in God’s favor. But now their rage is great. Now their true character is revealed. They “blaspheme God and repent not.”

This plague is perfectly suited to the sin of the people. They have honored the “day of the sun” according to the traditions of men, and now God gives them sun, plenty of it. In that day, many will long for the shelter of God’s mercy which they have so long despised.

God’s people will be hiding in desolate places, but He who provided food for Elijah in the wilderness will care for them. While the wicked are dying from the heat and pestilence, angels will shield God’s faithful people and supply their wants.

God’s promise is; “When the poor and needy seek water, and there is none, and their tongue faileth for thirst, I the Lord will hear them, I the God of Israel will not forsake them.” Isaiah 33:15, 16; 41:17.

“The Lord is thy keeper: the Lord is thy shade upon thy right hand. The sun shall not smite thee by day, nor the

moon by night.” Psalm 121:5-7.

## #5

**”And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain, and blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.” Revelation 16:10, 11.**

The fifth plague brings dense darkness to the seat of the Beast; his kingdom is full of darkness. For centuries Rome has poured out spiritual darkness onto the world, now they find themselves in actual darkness.

In choosing to honor the beast and receive his ‘Mark’ instead of honoring God and His ‘Seal’, the people have chosen darkness. Now again, God gives them what they’ve chosen.

Oh, if they had only responded to God’s great kindness. His arms have been stretched out in love. Now it is too late, The disobedient have decreed that those who have received God’s Seal cannot buy or sell. Now they themselves are starving with famine and groping in utter darkness. This supernatural darkness is a fit symbol of the gross darkness that has come upon the minds of those who have turned away from the light of truth.

God’s people are hiding in remote areas. They’ve lost their jobs and homes, and fled for their lives before insane men, urged on by the religious leaders and evil angels. They’ve given up all for Christ. They’ve seen the wicked perishing, but angels of God provide food for them. To the obedient God’s promise is given: “Bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure.”

“A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand; but it shall not come nigh thee. Only with thine eyes shalt thou behold and see the reward of the wicked ... there shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling.” Psalm 91:3-10. Read this precious Psalm and memorize it, as it will be fulfilled to the faithful in those fearful days.

By the fifth plague, the whole wicked world is really

angry. They've decided that those who honor God's Sabbath of the Bible are the cause of the horrible convulsions of nature, and they determine to blot them from the earth. The date is set. When the clock strikes midnight on a certain day, God's obedient people are to be put to death.

### #6

**"And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared." Revelation 15:12**

The sixth plague talks about the drying up of a river. When literal Babylon was conquered, the river that flowed through the city was dried up and the soldiers came into the city through the riverbed. So this shows us that spiritual Babylon is about to fall, as the 'waters', which represent the people of the world who support it, turn away from supporting it, and start to fight against it.

This prepares the way for Jesus' coming, represented as the 'Kings of the East'.

**"And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. For they are spirits of devils working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty." Revelation 16:13-14**

Always remember when you read the prophecies that they do not follow through in order like a story; the sixth plague of course does follow the fifth, but some things referred to here are reaching a climax that began long before.

These two verses, although they are mentioned in the time of the sixth plague, actually begin happening long before that. They are happening now, as Satan uses his miracles and tricks to fool people into disobeying God and seek to force everyone to disobey Him also.

Notice these three symbols; The Dragon, spiritualism; the Beast, Papal Rome; the False Prophet, Apostate Protestantism. Actually, the only true definition of 'Protestant' means to protest against Rome. Now that USA has formed

an alliance with Rome it is no longer Protestant, but has become apostate; the false prophet. Satan gets them to join together and he gets the kings and mighty men of the earth to join in too, how? By performing miracles and wonders that cause people to believe the lies he is telling them. Only the people who know and believe the Bible will not be tricked.

Satan's agencies in human form are active even now. Men have confederated to oppose the Lord of hosts. These confederacies will continue until Christ shall leave His place of intercession before the mercy seat, and shall put on the garments of vengeance. Satanic agencies are in every city, busily organizing into parties those opposed to the law of God. Professed saints and avowed unbelievers take their stand with these parties. This is no time for the people of God to be weaklings. We cannot afford to be off our guard for one moment.

**“Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame.” Revelation 15:15**

It is most interesting that Jesus inserts this warning here, during this period of final events. When this time actually comes, it is too late to get the garment of Christ's Righteousness and put it on. If we are not to be naked in that terrible day, and the entire universe see our shame, we must accept that White Raiment now and cooperate with Jesus as He works to perfect our characters to reflect His.

If we think we are ‘good enough’ as ‘good as the next guy’ and our own good works are enough to take us to heaven, and we don't feel the need to repent and plead with Jesus now to take all the sin out of our lives and make us pure, then in that day, we will be exposed to all, for what we really are; hypocrites.

**“And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon.” Revelation 15:16**

It is this gathering of all the powers of earth together for the purpose of fighting against God's Law and His people that is called the Battle of Armageddon. There have been many funny things taught about this subject, but it refers

to the time when the powers of Babylon the Great, seek to force everybody to break God's law. It is not a particular place, or a literal battle between earthly nations.

The word 'Armageddon' is made of two Hebrew words 'Har' and 'Megidon'. This is not some local battle fought in the Valley of Megido as some have said. The word 'Har' means mountain, and there is no mountain in Megido. 'Armageddon' is a symbolic word Jesus uses to denote the great universal battle, where the wicked turn against God and His faithful people.

This is a world-wide battle. America's national Sunday law has spread to all the nations of the world, and a universal law is passed to wipe the hated sect of Sabbath keepers from the face of the earth in one day.

Satan has always worked for this end, because he thinks that if all of God's faithful are wiped out, then God has to let him keep planet earth for his own kingdom. But this will never happen.

The spirits of devils, by their miracles, have prepared the rulers and people of the world and 'gather them together' to fight against God and His people. This is earth's final battle between good and evil. All have taken sides. The wicked are in the majority and seemingly have great advantage, like Goliath against David.

The people of God, some in prisons, some hidden in forests and mountains, still plead for God's protection, while companies of armed men, hurried on by evil angels, are preparing to execute the death sentence. It's now in the darkest hour, that the God of Israel will interpose to deliver His faithful people.

The date has been set to strike one stunning blow that will wipe the hated sect from the face of the earth. At midnight the death decree goes into effect, but the mighty God of heaven will interpose to save His people.

### # 7

**"And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done. And there were voices, and**

**thunders and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake and so great. And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague was exceeding great.”**  
**Revelation 16:17-21.**

Here we see Great Babylon, made out of these three parts, which Satan has worked so hard to bring together, quickly fall apart again, and all the parts fight against each other.

The seventh plague takes place as Jesus comes back to get His faithful people. Babylon the Great - The Mother of Harlots, has caused all nations to drink of the wine of her mixture of Christian and pagan sun-worship. Now she drinks of the wine of the wrath of God. Satan's attempt to enforce the death decree against God's people fails, as God steps in to save His people. And what a deliverance.

The mountains shake like a reed in the wind, and ragged rocks are scattered on every side. There is a roar as of a coming tempest. The sea is lashed into fury. There is heard the shriek of a hurricane, like the voice of demons upon a mission of destruction. The whole earth heaves and swells like the waves of the sea. Its surface is breaking up. Its very foundations seem to be giving way. Mountain chains are sinking. Inhabited islands disappear.

Splendid mansions erected by the rich with money embezzled from the poor are dashed to pieces before their eyes. Prison walls tumble down, and God's humble people, who have been held in bondage for their faith are set free.

Cities that have become like Sodom for wickedness, are swallowed up by the angry waters. Great hailstones, every one 'about the weight of a talent', (approximately 63 pounds) are doing their work of destruction. The proudest

cities of the earth are laid low.

It is impossible to describe the horror and despair of those who have trampled on God's requirements. The enemies of God's law, from the ministers down, have a new conception of what is truth. Too late, they see the true nature of the counterfeit sabbath that the Roman church has brought in, and the shaky foundation they've been building on. Many now see that they are lost. They've chosen the easy, popular way, and have received the Mark of the Beast.

They've followed the religious leaders instead of the plain word of God. They've been led to believe that the majority couldn't be wrong. Now they turn on their ministers and bitterly reproach them for their sorry state.

There appears in the sky a cloud which betokens the coming of the 'King of kings and Lord of lords'. In solemn silence God's people gaze upon it, as it draws nearer and nearer to the earth. Brighter and brighter it becomes, and more glorious, until it's a great white cloud, its glory like consuming fire.

Jesus rides forth as a mighty conqueror. "And the armies which were in heaven" follow Him. Revelation 19:11, 14. The whole heaven seems filled with dazzling forms; 'ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands'.

No pen can describe it. No human mind can imagine the wonderful scene. As the living cloud comes still nearer, every eye beholds the lovely Jesus. There's no crown of thorns on that holy brow, but now a crown of glory rests upon His sacred head. His face outshines the dazzling brightness of the sun. The King of Glory descends on the cloud amid terrific majesty, and wrapped in flaming fire.

The jokes have stopped. Cursing, lying lips are now silent. In the middle of their terror the wicked hear the voices of God's people joyfully exclaiming: "Lo this is our God; we have waited for Him, and He will save us." Isaiah 25:9. Are you ready? Are you sure?



**REVELATION 17****The Woman & the Beast**

**“And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication. So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns.”**  
**Revelation 17:1-3**

In chapter 17, John is shown something by one of the angels of the plagues. The scene is in the wilderness; this brings our minds to the 1260 years the Roman church ruled the world, and the persecuted people of God were forced into obscurity. Now we see this persecuting power drunken with the blood of martyrs. She has already committed fornication with the kings of the earth, and the people of earth have been deceived and made drunk by the wine of her false teachings. So this indicates the time very accurately at the end of the 1260 year period of Papal Rule in the Dark Ages. The timing is important to rightly interpret the message this chapter has for us today.

What does he see? A woman, which symbolizes a church, and she is riding on a savage beast, which represents the world governments and powers used by Satan to persecute God's people. She is called a whore, a woman that goes out with other men, not her husband, for money.

The true church is a pure woman, and she is the bride of Christ. But this woman, though she claims to belong to Jesus, has relations with all the kings and governments, and she does it for money and power. That is why she is called the Great Whore.

**“And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness**

**of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH. And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus, and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration.” Revelation 17:4-6**

What a clear description of the Roman church. See her colors, purple and scarlet; look at her riches and jewels, and she has a golden cup in her hand full of false doctrines, which make people spiritually drunk when they believe them.

She is a mother church; this is exactly what the Roman power claims to be. The Protestant churches are her daughters. And she is indeed drunken with the blood of saints and martyrs for Jesus, as she has persecuted and killed them by the millions. Jesus never wants His church to use the power of earthly governments and courts to make others obey her wishes.

As John sees this scene, he is amazed at the sight.

**“And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns.” Revelation 17:7.**

Now the angel proceeds to give to John a detailed explanation of the strange scene he is looking at. This explanation is very important to us, as these things are happening in our world, right now before our very eyes.

**“The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.” Revelation 17:8**

Notice the words, this beast ‘was’; it was ruling during the 1260 years; but now, at the time the vision is shown to John, he is told it ‘is not’. But he is told it will come back; it will ascend out of the bottomless pit.

Now we have heard the expression ‘bottomless pit’

before in the prophecies. What it means here is out of the depths of wickedness and sin of this world. Every time this expression is mentioned in prophecy it shows us that here is some new demonstration of Satan's power; some different form of wickedness than he has used before.

We saw the 'smoke out of the bottomless pit' which was a dark religion which arose in the deserts. We saw a beast from the bottomless pit arise to kill the two witnesses in the French Revolution, which was a form of atheism, not before known in Europe. Now we see that this beast, when it comes back again, will arise from the bottomless pit. As wicked and cruel as it was before in the 1260 years, it will be worse and a slightly different form when it comes again.

**"And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth." Revelation 17:9**

Rome is often referred to as the city on seven hills or mountains. The city of Rome is built on seven literal mountains or hills: "It is within the city of Rome, called The City on Seven Hills, that the entire area of Vatican State Proper is now confined" The Catholic Encyclopedia, p. 529.

But also another meaning can be seen here, as in prophecy a 'mountain' refers to a church or religious power, and seven, means complete or total. So this power sits on, or influences and tries to control all religious organizations.

**"And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space." Revelation 17:10**

These heads, and the seven kings are the same. They represent all the powers Satan has used to fight against God and His truth and His faithful people throughout world history.

1: BABYLON: from the time of Nimrod on.

2: MEDO-PERSIA:

3: GREECE:

4: PAGAN ROME:

5: PAPAL ROME: this being the head that was wounded or 'killed to death' in 1798.

6: ONE IS: this is the Lamb-like beast or USA; with its two horns of civil and religious liberty. How do we know this for sure? Because Revelation 13:12 tells us it exercises all the power of the leopard-like Beast 'before it', so we know the two horned USA beast/head follows the Leopard-like Papal beast/head. In this prophecy the Papal head is not yet 'killed to death' but it is so close to this time that prophecy states it is already fallen.

In Daniel 8:1, Daniel is given a vision during the reign of Belshazzar, the last king of Babylon. The vision sets forth the kingdoms of Bible prophecy, except that Babylon is not included. Daniel's vision leaves out Babylon as a kingdom of Bible prophecy, even though Babylon was still ruling the earth, and Belshazzar was still on the throne; but it was about to fall. It was past its power and glory. It was fallen, though it still reigned. This is the condition of the papacy in the 25 years before 1798. Yes, it still had not received the deadly wound, but prophetically, it had fallen.

7: ONE IS NOT YET COME: this, as we will see, is what we are now hearing a lot about in our word; the 'New World Order'. This is actually the U.N. activated and backed up by the might of the USA. When it comes into power it will be using as its 'moral authority' the:

8: RESURRECTED PAPAL ROMAN HEAD:

**"And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition." Revelation 17:11**

We also see that when the Roman power's deadly wound is healed, it can once again persecute heretics.

It was one of the seven, but now here it comes again. We are told it shall go into perdition; in other words it will continue until the end of all things and be destroyed by the plagues and the brightness of Jesus' coming.

**"And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast." Revelation 17:12, 13.**

It is most interesting that in the plans which the UN has drawn up for the 'New World Order', they have the world divided up into exactly ten parts. The leaders designated for these ten regions will agree to let this Beast power rule, as this is the way they can best get the people under control, by using religious power.

The scourges of Islam in the third woe will bring the nations to the point where a one world government looks appealing, but who is to rule it? The last pope has led the world to believe that Rome is a good and moral power, and so they agree to give 'their kingdom to the beast'. Sadly they have forgotten how Rome used such power in the past when she had it, and also that it is Rome's boast that she never changes. The papacy, supposedly, gives the government of the UN, moral authority, and the third player, the USA is what gives the financial and military power to this final triune government that leads the world to Armageddon.

**"These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful." Revelation 17:14**

This is what Armageddon is all about; making 'war with the Lamb'. How can an earthly power make war with the Lamb? By persecuting His true followers on earth. Jesus has said that what anyone does to His children is the same as if they did it to Him.

We see here that God knows all about what these powers are planning to do and He told His people about it long centuries before any of it happened. So we can know that He is in charge and if we stay obedient to Jesus, we will be kept safe.

**"And he saith unto me, The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues. And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. For God hath put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the**

**words of God shall be fulfilled.” Revelation 17:15-17**

Isn't this interesting? These 'horns' agree to let the whore/beast power rule; but inside they really hate her and can't wait until they can destroy her, and rule by themselves. But it is really no mystery; people who don't have Jesus in their heart, have no choice but to act like Satan, and he just wants to destroy and rule everybody and everything.

Notice that the ten horns here mentioned are not the same ten horns on the terrible beast of Daniel 7; those were the divided up Roman Empire and represented the nations of Europe.

These horns are the same as the ten toes in Daniel 2. These horns 'have no kingdom yet', but will rule with the Papal beast, when the two horned beast speaks like a dragon.

In other words, we see again another three-fold union; the same as the Beast, the False Prophet and the Dragon. This is the Papacy, Apostate-Americanized Protestantism, and Spiritualism, represented by the United Nations. Babylon the Great is made up of these three parts joined together by agreement for the one purpose of destroying God's people and truth from off the earth, and each intending to eliminate the other two as soon as possible.

**“And the woman which thou sawest is that great city, which reigneth over the kings of the earth.” Revelation 17:18.**

Here is another clear clue as to what power this is; there is only one 'city' that claims to reign over the kings of the earth and that is the Roman Vatican. Also a 'woman' in prophecy is a church or religious power; no other church claims the right to reign over the kings of earth. So just what is the destiny of this three-fold Babylon the Great?

**“Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls. For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light.”**

**Matthew 11:28-30**

**REVELATION 18****Fall of Great Babylon**

**“And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory. And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. Revelation 18:1, 2.**

This is a wonderful chapter in the Bible because it shows us that this cruel power, that has hurt so many people, is going to come to an end. These verses also show us a repeat of the second angel’s message; only this time it is telling everybody to get out of these fallen churches before they end up destroyed along with them.

And we see another angel; a special fourth angel, and he has so much power that the whole earth gets lighted up with his mighty message. This mighty angel comes down to mark the beginning of the preparation time leading to the ‘Loud Cry’ message given by the great power of the Holy Spirit in what we call the Latter Rain.

This is a very important part of our study. This other angel, the fourth angel, is declaring again the message of the second angel of Revelation 14, “Babylon is fallen, is fallen.” But this time it says Babylon the Great. We learned that Babylon the Great is the three-fold combination of the Beast, False Prophet and the Dragon and when it is seen here, it is a persecuting power; a combination of the 6th, 7th and 8th heads of the cruel scarlet monster that represents Satan’s efforts, through man-made organizations, to fight and destroy God’s people and His truth down through the whole history of the world.

We are also told it has become full of devils; though claiming to belong to God, it has rejected His Word and His ways, until Satan is in full control of it.

And a cage of unclean and hateful birds; crows, hawks, eagles, vultures and buzzards, make their living by picking to pieces other animals and birds, and eating their flesh.

There are so many in our society now that profess to be helping people, but that really are getting a very good living off of the misery of others, and are actually increasing that misery by casting doubt on the Word of God, the only real answer for man's distresses. Also the informers, and bribed officials, that cast down justice and do not care about poor and suffering ones, are also cruel and unclean kinds of birds.

**"For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies." Revelation 18:3**

Notice what it says about how the merchants of the earth have gotten rich because of Babylon's delicacies. Have you ever thought about all the money that people spend because of holidays that had their start in Paganism and were brought into the Roman church? Why if it wasn't for all these holiday, the stores wouldn't sell nearly as much.

Christmas, Easter, Valentines, Halloween, Christenings, First Communions, Birthdays and so on. It seems as if half or more things sold, have to do with one of these holidays. And people buy so much more unhealthful food and sugary treats, and waste so much money just because of holidays, rather than buying only what they need to live. The holidays all came from paganism and really have nothing to do with the Bible at all.

**"And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues. For her sins have reached unto heaven, and God hath remembered her iniquities." Revelation 18:4, 5.**

God has set a limit beyond which the wickedness of man will not be allowed to continue. It was that way at the flood; it was that way at Sodom and Gomorrah; and it is that way now. "Surely the wrath of man shall praise thee: the remainder of wrath shalt thou restrain." Psalm 76:10. As the final trouble comes, God's people will press very close to Jesus and put away all their sins and worldly ways. Then the full power of the Holy Spirit will come to them



and Jesus will send the final warning through the earth like lightening.

**“Reward her even as she rewarded you, and double unto her double according to her works: in the cup which she hath filled fill to her double. How much she hath glorified herself, and lived deliciously, so much torment and sorrow give her: for she saith in her heart, I sit a queen, and am no widow, and shall see no sorrow.” Revelation 18:6, 7.**

Remember in Revelation 13 there was the warning that those who imprisoned and killed with the sword would get the same treatment? Here we see these powers did not learn their lessons about treating others as they themselves would wish to be treated, and now she is to get back double for all she has done. As much as she has been rich and enjoyed the high life, while others suffered poverty, she will suffer even more.

Also here we see her saying that she is not a widow; she was a widow for a while when her beast partner was wounded in the head and unable to persecute. So we see her here at a time when she has her beast paramour back and sits proudly on its savage back. She thinks she really has it made this time; there is no one on earth that can stand against her; but what are we told?

**“Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her. And the kings of the earth, who have committed fornication and lived deliciously with her, shall bewail her, and lament for her, when they shall see the smoke of her burning, Standing afar off for the fear of her torment, saying, Alas, alas, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! for in one hour is thy judgment come.” Revelation 18:8-10.**

God judges this boastful, proud power and Babylon the Great will fall and receive the Seven Last Plagues. We are told here that some groups will bewail her; the powers of earthly governments will miss the help she gave them, and the merchants will miss all the money she helped them make. Now this is a symbolic word-picture, because no one

who is part of Babylon will be able to stand back and watch her fall; they will all be caught up in the ruin. The only ones who will see this, will be the people of God, the despised and afflicted remnant. "A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand; but it shall not come nigh thee. Only with thine eyes shalt thou behold and see the reward of the wicked." Psalm 91:7, 8. But Jesus is giving us a parable picture to help us understand how complete will be the final fall of this cruel power.

**"And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more: The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls, and fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet, and all thyine wood, and all manner vessels of ivory, and all manner vessels of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble, And cinnamon, and odours, and ointments, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and slaves, and souls of men." Revelation 18:11-13.**

Only a religious power could be said to buy and sell the 'souls of men', and there is no doubt that Rome claims to be able to do this.

**"And the fruits that thy soul lusted after are departed from thee, and all things which were dainty and goodly are departed from thee, and thou shalt find them no more at all. The merchants of these things, which were made rich by her, shall stand afar off for the fear of her torment, weeping and wailing, And saying, Alas, alas, that great city, that was clothed in fine linen, and purple, and scarlet, and decked with gold, and precious stones, and pearls! For in one hour so great riches is come to nought. And every shipmaster, and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off, And cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying, What city is like unto this great city." Revelation 18:14-18.**

Ships in prophecy represent economic interests; the financiers of our world and the power they exert through controlling the wealth.

**"And they cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping**

**and wailing, saying, Alas, alas, that great city, wherein were made rich all that had ships in the sea by reason of her costliness! for in one hour is she made desolate. Rejoice over her, thou heaven, and ye holy apostles and prophets; for God hath avenged you on her.” Revelation 18:19, 20.**

Remember in Revelation 6, how the blood of the slain people of God cried to God for justice from the earth? Well here we see the justice. God has given much time and many warnings but finally it has to be that vengeance falls onto the cruel power so determined to destroy God’s people and blot His truth from the earth.

**“And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all.” Revelation 18:21.**

Terrible destruction will rack the whole world at this time of the fall of Babylon the Great.

**“And the voice of harpers, and musicians, and of pipers, and trumpeters, shall be heard no more at all in thee; and no craftsman, of whatsoever craft he be, shall be found any more in thee; and the sound of a millstone shall be heard no more at all in thee; And the light of a candle shall shine no more at all in thee; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in thee: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived.” Revelation 18:22, 23.**

We all know how candles and weddings are associated with the services of the Roman church. And we all know that the ‘great men’ support the popular movements. Sorceries? One of the things sorcery stands for is claiming to speak to the dead, and praying to dead ‘saints’ and relics sure fits there.

**“And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth.” Revelation 18:24.**

This is a strange and fascinating verse; but as you study history carefully, you will find that wherever there has been a war, or a terrible massacre, or some cruel and hurtful thing done by people to other people, you will find these apostate

powers back of it somewhere.

It is time to heed the voice and come out of all organizations that despise or ignore the plain Bible Truths, and take our stand firmly on the Word of God; claiming His promises and living in humble obedience to His requirements. None of us want to be part of this final fall of apostate powers.

## REVELATION 19

### Jesus Rides Forth

**"And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God: For true and righteous are his judgments: for he hath judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of his servants at her hand. And again they said, Alleluia. And her smoke rose up for ever and ever. And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia." Revelation 19:1-4.**

Here we are told about how Jesus will fight for His people, and the cruel, corrupt powers that torture and kill, will come to an end forever. This is really the story of Jesus coming to rescue His bride and receiving His kingdom. Verse after verse tell of the joy of the redeemed ones in all the different groups; how they all agree that the Lord God is so wonderful and they are so happy that He is reigning.

**"And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great. And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth." Revelation 19:5, 6.**

Here we are shown the joy of the unfallen worlds, the angels and the redeemed, that Jesus has brought about justice and the cruel powers have finally come to an end.

**"Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for**



**the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.” Revelation 19:7-9.**

There is much to think about here in these triumphant word pictures. Here we are reminded of the parables Jesus told about the wedding feast, and the wedding garment all must have on to be a guest there. By the wedding garment in the parable is represented the pure, spotless character which Christ's true followers will possess.

To the church it is given “that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white,” “Not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing.” Ephesians 5:27. The fine linen, says the Scripture, “is the righteousness of saints.” It is the righteousness of Christ, His own unblemished character

that through faith is given to all who receive Him as their personal Saviour.

Have we the wedding garment on? Or shall we be of that number that shall be left outside because we are unready? How anxious we are that every one of you should have the wedding garment on; not the garment of your own righteousness, but the righteousness of Christ. That you should be prepared, that, when the examination of the guests shall take place, you may not be one that shall be bound hand and foot, and cast out, because you are unready.

**“And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.” Revelation 19:10**

This was such a wonderful scene that John, caught up in the wonder of it all, fell down to worship the angel who was showing him the scenes. But he is quickly reminded that he must not do this; he must only worship God.

He is told something very important here. Revelation 12 tells us that the Remnant believers will keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus. Now here we see what the Testimony of Jesus is; it is the Spirit of Prophecy! The remnant of God’s faithful ones will have the true gift of prophecy among them.

We also see that the angels are God’s servants, and they are employed in caring for us and teaching us as Jesus directs them. Yet there is more to this work of the angels, as their job is to guide and direct every person who chooses to follow Jesus with all their heart. They also work with people who haven’t given their hearts to Jesus, trying to guide them to the light. But even so, we are never to pray to angels or worship them.

If you really give your whole heart to Jesus, then the angels will help and guide you, and God’s ‘Spirit of Prophecy’ will teach you; both through the ‘Spirit of Prophecy’ writings, and the Bible. Sometimes, even though you may not be called to be ‘prophet’, He may show you things by dreams and impressions. But always check out these things

by the Bible and the Spirit of Prophecy writings, because Satan tries to fool us. God will never send you a message that says something that doesn't agree with the Bible and what we call the 'Spirit of Prophecy' writings.

Sometimes the Holy Spirit of Prophecy guides people who have given their hearts to Jesus, to help and teach people who don't know Him yet. In the story of Phillip and the Ethiopian, this Spirit sent Phillip out where he met a person who wanted to learn about Jesus.

"And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit." Joel 2:28, 29.

**"And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean." Revelation 19:11-14.**

Now when Jesus comes, He is not going to be riding a real horse with an army on horses behind Him; again this is a word-picture to teach us things about the final defeat of sin and Satan. It is a scene of grandeur and triumph and He is shown as the Hero on the white charger, coming to rescue His bride. It is a picture we can all identify with. His many crowns show that He is Lord of all; and his bloodstained garments speak of the terrible price He has paid for our salvation, as he trod the winepress alone.

**"And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God." Revelation 19:15.**

The fine white linen again is telling of the perfect righ-

teousness of God in this warfare against sin. He is called the Word of God as He identifies himself with the Bible, and again we see that sharp two edged sword of God's Holy Word.

**"And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS." Revelation 19:16.**

There is no authority in the universe greater than that of Jesus, as He comes in triumph to receive His faithful people. The potentates of earth, lately so bold in their plans to destroy God's children, are now helpless and groveling in terror.

**"And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God; That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great." Revelation 19:17, 18.**

This is again a word-picture giving us information and assurance, that though all the mighty men and powers of earth will be arrayed against the people who love Jesus and keep His commandments, they will be destroyed and Jesus will be triumphant, and His people will be safe and happy with Him forever after.

**"And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone. And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which sword proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh." Revelation 19:19-21.**

Jesus referred to this time when he said in Matthew 24:28 "For wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles



be gathered together.” Jesus died so all could be saved and He never wanted any one to be lost, but the cruel wicked course of the followers of Satan, leave Him no alternative but to destroy them. The Bible seeks to warn transgressors that the wages of sin is death. Those who continue on in the course of rebellion and defiance of God’s Law will end up as buzzard bait.

## ***REVELATION 20***

### **The Dragon's End**

**“And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.” Revelation 20:1-3.**

Now we find out what is going to happen after Jesus comes and gathers His dear children from off this earth. It talks about Satan getting tied up with a great chain. Now remember these picture stories are full of symbols. You could not tie up a spirit being with a real chain. It says he is cast into a ‘bottomless pit’, which means a place that is empty and deserted.

What happens when Jesus comes? All the people who have chosen to belong to Him are taken up into the cloud to go to heaven with Jesus. All the people who chose to go their own way and fight against God and His law are killed. So who is left? Just Satan and his nasty angels.

When Satan was first cast out of heaven, he was allowed to come back and visit at times. But after he cruelly killed dear Jesus on the cross, the angels would not allow him to even visit anymore. He can still visit other planets though, and they are looking forward to the day when he can’t come any more, because even though he cannot harm them, he

likes to tell them all about the bad things God's children are doing. But when Jesus returns and takes His people to the heavenly city, God is going to do something that stops Satan and his bunch from being able to leave this planet.

For one thousand years these cruel and rebellious angels will have nothing to do except walk around and see the terrible mess they made of this once beautiful planet. Everywhere the cities are all smashed; the houses are all broken; nothing is left alive and there are dead bodies everywhere. And it is dark and dismal.

Satan has only his evil angels to tempt and mislead, and they, after 6,000 years, are as bad as he is. This earth becomes his prison. He wanted to show how he would rule the world, so he took the dominion from Adam and Eve by deceit, but now everyone knows what kind of a ruler he really is. Also, Satan has made claims and promises to many people who have worshipped him directly down through the ages. He has said that he will raise his followers from the dead, and then they will all have a big party. Well, he will have 1,000 years to try it. But Satan has no life in himself, and cannot raise even one of them.

Friends, that is the destiny of all who choose this world's so-called pleasures; to be one of the dead bodies rotting on this earth. Satan may give you the idea that the wrong things of this earth are 'fun' and that having your own way is what you need to try and do. But he doesn't have his own way even now, and he sure won't in the future.

There is only one way to be truly happy and to 'have your own way' and that is to always choose God's way. You see Jesus knows what is good, and He also knows what will only lead to pain and death. Everything the Bible tells us not to do, is because those things will hurt you sooner or later. Remember this when you feel angry that you can't have things exactly the way you want them.

**"And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his**

**image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.” Revelation 20:4, 5.**

What will the people, who go to heaven, do during the thousand years that Satan is stuck on this earth? They get to open the books and see why the ones who are lost are not in heaven. There may be someone who you thought would be in heaven and when you get there, you look around and you don't find him or her. You will go and look in the books, and there you will learn why they are not able to be there.

But more than this, we will judge the wicked people and the wicked angels. Each life will be looked at carefully, and the amount of time they must suffer in the final punishment, before they die forever, is written by each name. This is only fair of God, for some, like Satan's angels, have spent thousands of years doing cruel and horrible things, while some people only lived a few years doing nasty things.

God's people have long looked forward to the time in heaven when we get to see history as it actually happened. When all the lies that have been told to us are exposed and the Truth is seen. Then we will see the stories of the poor martyrs who were killed and hidden away where nobody knew about it. We will see how greedy, selfish men, under the control of devils, planned the terrible wars and cruel happenings in this world behind the scenes.

We will know the truth about many leaders in the churches who pretend to be holy and are greatly admired, but behind the scenes when they think nobody sees, they are wicked and cruel. We will know about how the corrupt ceremonies of Rome came down through the ages from before the flood. All questions will be answered; never again will we have to say, "I don't know; I wish I knew."

We will also see the true and brave deeds of the redeemed; even little children that nobody knew about, who bravely stood for their faith in Jesus, even unto death. In that day all Truth will be known. Learn to love Truth now,

and don't watch, read, make up, or listen to things that are not true. Only Truth will set you free and keep you free; lies and fiction will only enslave you and end up destroying you.

Even as a child, this compiler often wished that everything written in books and libraries that was not true and honest, would just disappear. If that happened many libraries would be nearly empty. And textbooks that students have to study from, would be nearly empty too.

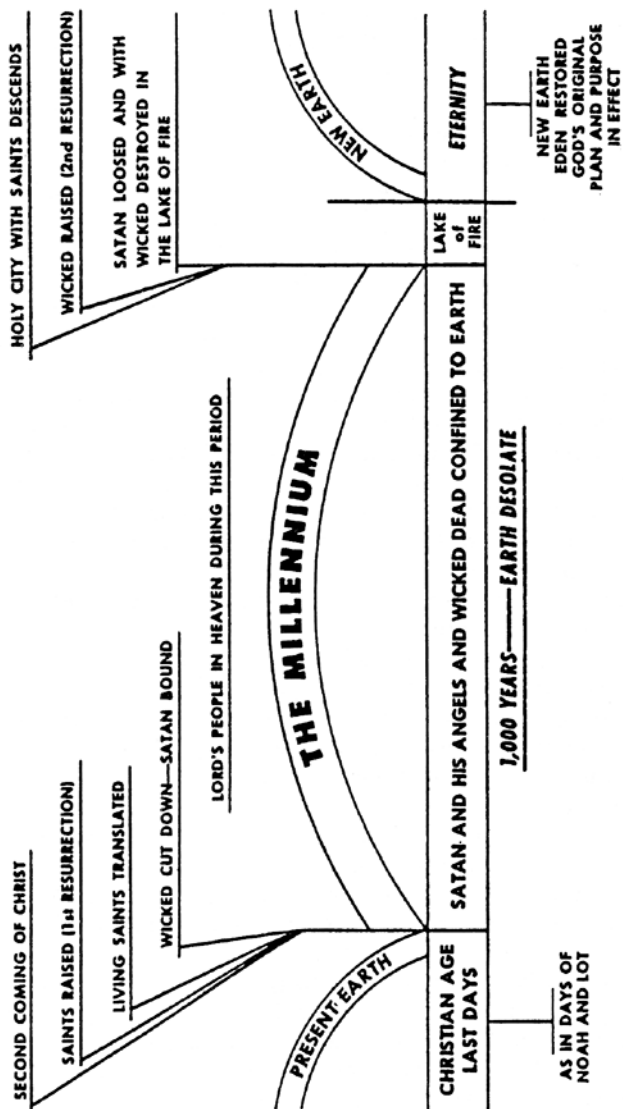
**"Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years. And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea." Revelation 20:6-8.**

What happens to loose Satan out of his prison? Well, at the end of the thousand years Jesus returns to earth. At this time His feet touch the Mount of Olives and it splits in half forming a great plain. Then the Holy City the New Jerusalem comes down to earth and settles on this plain.

It is at this time that the wicked dead are raised. For once everyone who ever lived on earth, is alive at the same time. The wicked come forth from the grave in the same condition they went in. What a contrast is seen between the redeemed and the lost hosts of Satan's kingdom. They come up with the same ugly marks of sin and disease, cruelty and hatred on them, as they had when they died; while the righteous are bright and beautiful.

**"And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them." Revelation 20:9**

Satan goes forth among the vast multitude of resurrected wicked, and makes the feeble strong. He then points them to the countless millions who have been raised, and makes them believe that he, by his power, had brought them up from their graves. He points to the powerful race



who lived before the flood, and to kings and warriors who were well skilled in battle, and flatters his subjects that their numbers are much greater than those in the city. He tells them that they can make war with them, and dethrone God and his Son Jesus Christ, and take the throne and occupy the city, and enjoy its richness and glory. As the wicked come forth from their graves, they resume the current of their thoughts where it ceased in death.

The race before the flood, perished blaspheming God. Many perished in battle; they fell while thirsting to conquer and they rise with the same spirit of war that they possessed when they fell. They accept Satan as their general, and his angels as their officers. Satan and his angels were once inhabitants of the city; and they claim to understand just how to attack the city and take possession of it. He also puts forth the idea that he, and not God, is the rightful ruler of the universe. With Satan at their head, they go up on the breadth of the earth, and compass the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city; and fire comes down from God out of heaven and devours them.

**“And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.” Revelation 20:10.**

Remember that ‘for ever and ever’, means as long as their life lasts. It does not mean everlasting life in an eternal burning hell. The wages of sin are death, not living forever in hell. The amount of time for the punishment of each being has been decided by God and the heavenly court. When that time is over they enter into eternal death, and are as if they had never existed.

**“And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.” Revelation 20:11, 12.**

Before the fire falls upon the wicked, when they are busy planning how to conquer the Holy City and take it for themselves, Christ again appears to the view of His enemies. Far above the city, upon a foundation of burnished gold, is a throne, high and lifted up. Upon this throne sits the Son of God, and around Him are the subjects of His kingdom. The power and majesty of Christ no language can describe, no pen can portray. The glory of the Eternal Father surrounds His Son. The brightness of His presence fills the City of God, and flows out beyond the gates, flooding the whole earth with its radiance.

The whole wicked world stand arraigned at the bar of God on the charge of high treason against the government of heaven. They have none to plead their cause; they are without excuse; and the sentence of eternal death is pronounced against them.

**“And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.” Revelation 20:13-15.**

As powerful and important as the rebellious powers of earth may seem now, in that day things will be very different. Today is the time, when mercy still lingers; when Jesus still pleads in the Heavenly sanctuary and all power is available to overcome sin in the name of Jesus; this is when we must hasten to make our future secure. Just claiming to believe at some point in your life, is not enough. Remember Jesus said that some of the lost cry ‘Lord, Lord’ to Him. They had made a ‘profession’ of faith in Jesus, but they had never surrendered their whole selves, and overcame sin in the power of the Blood of the Lamb, choosing a life of obedience to the Law of God.

Jesus is very clear that the idea of ‘Once saved; Always saved’ is not true. Only those who choose Christ and obedience to God’s Eternal Law, and in Jesus’ strength, walk with Him all the way, will be in the Holy City on that day.

**REVELATION 21****A Wonderful Future**

**“And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.” Revelation 21:1, 2.**

Now John is shown the most glorious sight ever seen by human eye; the Holy City, New Jerusalem, which will one day be your home if you choose to be faithful to Jesus. When you think about heaven, think about how wonderful it will be to live there.

It says in Hebrews 11:10 that Abraham looked for a city, whose Builder and Maker is God. There are some very nice cities on earth. Some have been carefully planned and laid out well, and they are a pleasure to visit or live in, but most cities of earth are large, crowded, dirty, and full of wickedness. In fact the evil in cities is growing so much that no Christian, who can possibly live away from the cities, should be in them today. But a city that God builds would be a wonderful place.

**“And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.” Revelation 21:3.**

The most exciting thing about Heaven is that Jesus is there with us forever. When you were a child, you remember that the happiest times for you would be when your Mom or Dad would come and play with you and spend time with you. You might have had lots of toys and things to do, but nothing was as much fun as when Mom or Dad did it with you.

It will be like that in Heaven; everything will be so much more wonderful and fun because Jesus will be with us doing things with us. He will answer all our questions and teach us wonderful things that we can't even imagine now.

**“And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and**



**there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.” Revelation 21:4**

Satan, his evil angels, sin and sinners will then be forever gone. After the wicked are all destroyed, along with the devil and his nasty angels, all suffering and pain, death and fear will be gone from the whole universe. And it will never come back any more. Rebellion and death will never again raise its ugly head in God’s universe.

**“And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful. And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely. He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.” Revelation 21:5-7.**

The Holy City will come down to earth, and after the fires that purify the earth, Jesus, our Creator, will create it all new for us. We will be able to watch it happen. And then what a celebration of joy and peace will come on that first Sabbath in the New Earth. What music! What beauty! What wonderful friends we will have.

There will be animals and birds to enjoy, and the redeemed will be able to run and never get tired, and also to fly. They will be able to travel through space and see things we can’t even imagine. They will travel with Jesus and the angels and meet people on other planets, who have been watching the sad history of this sin-sick world, and are so happy to see people redeemed from it. They will all be our friends. Do you know that the people in other planets will want to hear about how Jesus saved you? Yes; this will be the wonderful story we will tell over and over again.

**“But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.” Revelation 21:8.**

This is a big part of the reason that the New Earth will

be so happy; all ugliness and cruelty and those who loved doing such things, will be forever gone.

**"And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife. And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, Having the glory of God: and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal;" Revelation 21:9-11.**

The angels will delight in showing the beauties of God's kingdom to the redeemed from this world.

**"And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: On the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel. Revelation 21:12-17**

This is the 'City Four-Square'. Our minds cannot grasp the breathtaking glory of the scene, but it does us good to think on it often.

In the Land of Fadeless Day,  
Lies the City Four-square,  
It shall never pass away,  
And there is no night there.  
God shall wipe away all tears,  
There's no pain, nor Death, nor fears,  
And they count not time by years—  
For there is no night there."

**“And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald; The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus; the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst. And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; every several gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass.” Revelation 21:18-21.**

When you figure out the colors of the precious stones mentioned here, you see that together they will form an intricate rainbow pattern; the city will appear to float on a rainbow of color.

**“And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it. And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof. And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.” Revelation 21:22-26.**

Did you know that everything that is truly good and wonderful on this earth will be found in heaven? Yes, indeed. All the wonderful heroes of the faith will be there, and all the kind and noble people who ever lived, will be there. Everything that is right and good to do, will also be done in heaven.

There are so many funny ideas about what heaven is like, that some children have thought they would not want to go to such a place. They have been told that all you do is sit around on a cloud and play a harp all day. Or some have thought that everybody just sits around on hard chairs and looks very solemn, and you have to be quiet.

But this is not true at all; heaven will be the happiest place that you can ever imagine. But there would be people who would not want to go to heaven, because the only things

that they like to do are sad, bad things and things that are harmful and wicked. Unless they allow Jesus to give them a new heart, that loves the kind of things God loves, they would not be happy in heaven. That is why they will not be there.

**“And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb’s book of life.”**  
**Revelation 21:27.**

If a person wants to smoke dirty cigarettes, or drink harmful alcohol, or take drugs that hurt his body and brain; or if he wants to do things that hurt or destroy other people or animals, they can never be allowed in heaven. They would be miserable there, and they would also ruin the place. The New Jerusalem will never have dirty words or obscene jokes written on its walls.

Some people, if they were there, the first thing they would try to do is make rules to spoil everyone’s happiness; and then they would make a plan to keep all the gold and jewels for themselves and not share with others. First thing you know they would make people have to pay to have fruit from the Tree of Life, and guards would be placed around the River of Life, and only certain people could go there.

This will not ever happen; heaven is a place of joy and freedom such as us poor creatures down here cannot even imagine. Never again will fear or oppression raise its ugly head. As the years of eternity roll, we will have more and more joy and happiness, and as we learn more and more about our kind Heavenly Father and our Saviour, we will have more and more love in our hearts. ‘Tis love that makes us happy’. All who will be part of that eternal kingdom will have characters like Jesus’ own lovely character.

Even our very best times here on earth, are always shadowed by the threat that ‘something could happen’. Happy times often turn into disaster. Here we never know when tragedy could strike, tearing a loved one from our family, or bringing suffering, want or loss. These fears will never more trouble us in that City so bright, where the Lamb is the Light.

## REVELATION 22

**Behold, I Come Quickly**

**“And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever. And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book.” Revelation 22:1-7.**

Here Jesus is telling us, “This is for real; it is true; and it is soon going to happen.” He then says those who ‘keep the things in the book’ are blessed. What does that mean? Well, if we learn about the things this book tells us and we give our whole hearts to Jesus and let Him help us to live His kind of life, we will be very glad and happy. And someday, very soon, He will come and take us home.

Oh, I see some people interested in things that are only traps of Satan; they have TV programs or cartoons; videos and video or computer games, and they think these things are so important. Or they are all caught up with baseball, or football, or soccer, or hockey, or basketball, and they think it is the most important thing in the whole world. But it isn’t at all.

Satan has invented a multitude of ways in to keep men from serving God and preparing a character for heaven. He has invented sports and games, and people get all caught up in them with such intensity that one would suppose a

crown of life was to reward the winner.

These things are not what is important. The most important thing in the whole world is to live like Jesus, with Him in your heart, and be every day getting ready for heaven.

**“And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. Then saith he unto me, See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.” Revelation 22:8, 9.**

Here John gets excited again because of the wonderful things he is seeing and forgets, and tries to worship the angel, but he patiently reminds him, “Worship God.”

This is very good advice; when we really worship God and we think about Him, we admire Him, we love to talk about Him, our whole life aims towards Him; Then we will be truly happy.

**I think of my blessed Redeemer,  
I think of Him all the day long,  
I sing, for I cannot be silent,  
His love is the theme of my song!**

**“And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand.” Revelation 22:10.**

We remember that the book of Daniel was sealed until the ‘Time of the End’, but Revelation was not to be sealed, as its prophecies were unfolding even as John was writing the book.

But there was one part of Revelation that was sealed. Do you recall what that was? Yes, it was the story told by the Seven Thunders in chapter 10:3, 4. This verse tells us that close to the end of time, just before the final crisis, even these ‘thunders’ will be understood by the students of prophecy. This time is now here so we know that very soon probation will close on this old earth and Jesus will return for His children.

**“He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still. And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.” Revelation 22:11-13.**

This is the announcement Jesus will make when human probation closes. It is a solemn time when the destinies of all have been fixed forever; not by a self-centered decision of God; but each soul, by his own daily choices, will have sealed his fate to where it can never be reversed. Oh, may we all be found on Jesus’ side on that day.

**“Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie.” Revelation 22:14-15.**

Who are going to be in heaven? Those who obey God. Who are going to be left out? ‘Dogs’; This isn’t bow-wow doggies; no, it means cruel, heartless, wicked people. ‘Sorcerers’; Have you noticed a lot of people into magic and witches and wizards these days? Well, they must repent and leave those things, or they will never see heaven.

Whoremongers and murderers; this means sexually impure people and those who kill and are cruel to others.

Idolaters; are people who love something or someone better than they love Jesus and His ways.

Those who ‘Love and make lies’; this is a very serious one, it includes people who like to pretend that things that are not true are true, and people who like to read or see fiction stories. It includes people who write or make fiction stories or movies. It also includes being dishonest in any way; and those who refuse to believe the Bible because they would rather have things some other way. The only safety is to always love what is true.

I would invite all who read this, to carefully look around in your life, and if you find any things, (games, stories,

books, TV, fantasies, movies) that are not true, get them out of your life. Then replace them with God's Word and true things. I can tell you from experience, you will be so happy you did.

**"I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star. And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely." Revelation 22:16, 17.**

All the blessings obtained for mankind by the sinless life and sacrificial death of the dear Savior, are offered freely, to all who will accept them. The lowliest sinner is invited and the loftiest king has no supremacy. All may receive the promise and all who accept it are to join in sounding the invitation, "Come and take freely".

**"For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book. He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen." Revelation 22:18-21.**

Then that voice, richer than any music that ever fell on mortal ear, is heard, saying: 'Your conflict is ended.' '...Come, you blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.' This is our hope. This is our destiny. We can live forever. If we miss eternity, we have missed everything.

If we are not ready for Christ's soon return, we will miss the greatest event in history. Jesus says "Come: Come to forgiveness. Come for mercy. Come for victory over besetting sin. Come to eternity. Come enter the kingdom prepared for you."

If you desire to live in His kingdom forever, bow before



Him, surrender your life to Him, take into your hands the Holy Bible, open it with a prayer for guidance, read it and bring its teachings into your life. Ask Him to guide you and make this a reality for you.

“Even so, Come Lord Jesus.”



**“The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the Lord.” Isaiah 65:25**

# FURNITURE OF THE SANCTUARY

ARK  
OF THE  
COVENANT



MOST  
HOLY  
PLACE

ALTAR OF  
INCENSE



HOLY  
PLACE

GOLDEN  
CANDLE-  
STICKS

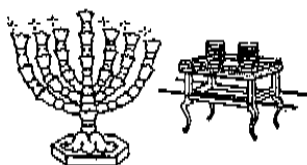


TABLE OF  
SHEWBREAD



LAVAR



BRAZAN  
ALTAR  
OF BURNT  
OFFERING

*Appendix A1:*

# Light from the Ancient Sanctuary

## *Understanding its Design and Services*

The Gospel is the Good News that God both forgives and restores! Our characters and attitudes are included in this restoration. In fact there is nothing that is not included in this restoration, we become a new creation. It is all connected with the True Worship of our great God.

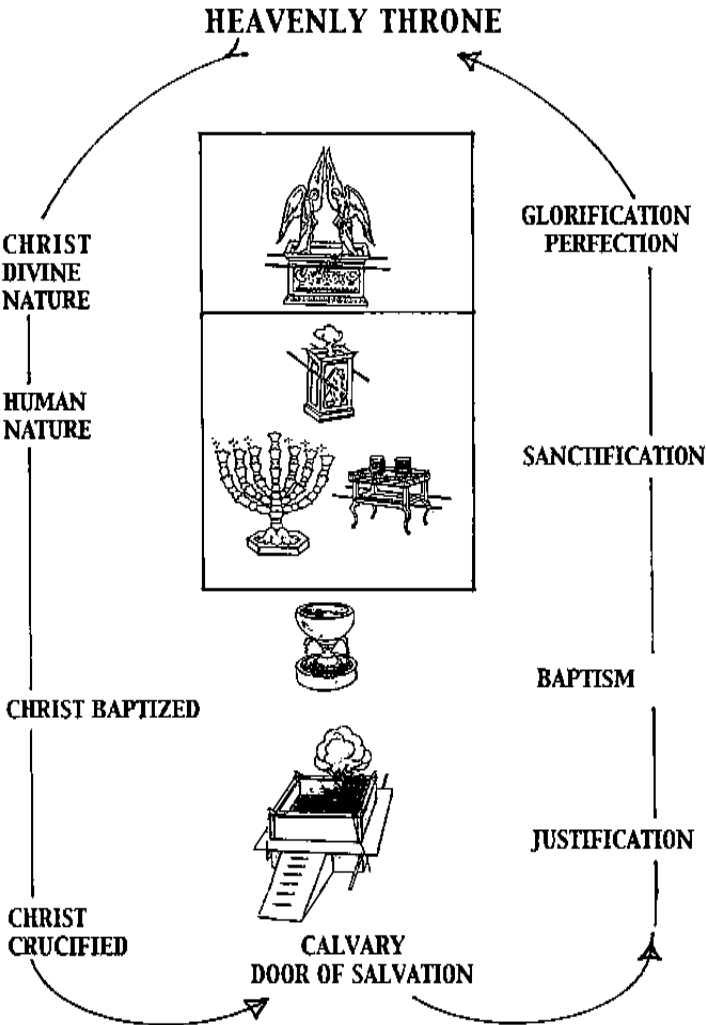
Did the people have the Gospel in the days before the Cross? Were they saved in a different way than we are?

The Gospel was given to Adam and Eve. As soon as sin entered this world, they were given the promise that a Redeemer would come. It was to show faith in that coming Redeemer, they were told to offer innocent lambs as a sin offering.

This was to impress upon them that sin was a deadly thing that would one day take the life of the Holy Son of God. The Creator Himself had pledged to be surety for the lost race, to give mankind a second chance. If they would choose to repent and forsake sin, and through faith in the coming Redeemer, live lives of obedience to God, they could be restored to a place in God's universal family.

"And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel." Genesis 3:15. This was the first Gospel promise and also a prophecy. It shows us that the Gospel always creates two classes—those who accept it and those who reject it.

Yes, the Gospel was known in the Old Testament, and nowhere do we see it more clearly outlined than in the services and offerings, and even the very design of the Ancient Hebrew Sanctuary. Designed by God to be an object lesson for people down through the ages, to help them better understand the Great Plan of Redemption, it is full of deep meaning for any one who would seek to walk the path of Salvation at Jesus' side.



Bring an offering and come and join me, as we go to worship our Creator and Redeemer in the Ancient Sanctuary. But is there really anything we can ‘give’ to God? “. . . for all things come of Thee, and of Thine own have we given Thee.” 1 Chronicles 29:14

Although Salvation is a Free Gift, yet to receive it calls for complete surrender of all we have and are to our dear Redeemer, this was the lesson in the bringing of offerings. Bring an offering—Bring everything to the altar:

### **TIME, TALENT, BODY-TEMPLE, TREASURE.**

Psalm 29:2 “Give unto the Lord the glory due unto His name; worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness.” [Margin: “Give unto the Lord the honor of His name in His glorious sanctuary.”]

The whole plan of Salvation is to be found here in the sanctuary and its services: the vindicating of the honor of God’s name from Satan’s accusations and the transformation of the repenting sinner to the Divine character of unselfish Love (Agape). This is the Gospel; Good News. If there is no transformation, there is no Good News.

All doctrines must fit with the sanctuary or they are not true doctrines and should be rejected. This gives us a useful guide while evaluating new theories on the Gospel.

John 1:9 “That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.”

The sanctuary was a very beautiful tent shaped like a rectangle. It had two parts inside which were like two squares. All around this tent was a courtyard. We are going to look at that courtyard first.

### **COURTYARD**

As the repentant sinner, through the wooing of the Holy Spirit, is led to feel his need and to desire to approach to God, he is invited to enter by the one doorway open to all.

The courtyard tells us about things that were going to happen on earth. It had only one entrance on the east side. This was so the people coming to worship would have their back to the rising sun and not think about worshipping the sun like the pagans did. The one entrance means Jesus is

the only way for us to be saved. There are not ‘many different ways’.

John 6:37 “All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.”

The first object to catch the eye upon entering the courtyard of the sanctuary was a pile of ashes. These were systematically removed from the Altar of Burnt Offering and were the remains of the sin offerings. The pile was kept in view there until the next cleaning of the altar, whereupon the old ashes were carried out of the camp and the newly removed ashes put in their place.

These ashes showed clearly to the people what the final end of sin really is; the destiny of the unrepentant.

“For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.” Romans 6:23

This represented the work of the Spirit in reproving sin and urging to repentance and righteousness.

We see this in the words of David in Psalms 73, when he couldn’t understand the prospering of the wicked; “Until I went into the sanctuary of God; then understood I their end.” He saw their end in the pile of ashes.

The next object to meet the gaze is the Brazen Altar of Burned Offering. On this the innocent lambs, symbolically bearing the sin of the repentant sinner were consumed. It pointed clearly to Jesus, the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world, who would take upon His innocent soul the sins of the world and pay the death penalty. We are going to look at this service and what it shows us about Jesus and what He is to us

It was only as the sinner saw by faith that the sacrifice of the lamb pointed to Christ, the sin bearer, that this service served the purpose God intended. Later the Israelites began to adopt the pagan idea that the burnt offering was a gift from them to please or pacify God, as the heathen made offerings to please their demon-gods.

When Adam first sinned, God told him a way to be saved would be provided and he was to offer a lamb to show his faith in what the Lamb of God had promised to

do for him.

The very first man born on earth had his own ideas about how to worship God, and we know what happened in the story of Cain and Abel. The ones who followed Cain's ways had their own kind of religion. Their offerings were a gift from them to the god they worshiped, but the offering of a lamb by God's people was to show faith in the great Gift God was giving to man. It was the opposite.

If we give something to God, we can be proud of that. But when we know the truth, that God has to give everything to us, or we will perish, then we can't be proud any more. God wants us to be humble, so He can change our wicked hearts and give us Jesus' unselfish heart.

The lamb was slain by the sinner himself, to impress that his sins caused the death of the Son of God. Without this unspeakable gift, mankind would perish. And as the lamb suffered eternal loss, so Christ forever lost certain abilities of Deity, such as omnipresence, the ability to be in more than one place at one time. Now forever bearing human flesh, He cannot do this.

His body will always bear the marks and scars of the crucifixion, while the redeemed will have perfect bodies. God gave His Son; He didn't lend Him.

Next on our journey through the courtyard, representing Justification, we see right in front of the sanctuary tent, a double dish of water called the Laver. It is where the priest would wash their hands and feet before they would go into the tent.

The Laver also is like baptism; a dying to sin, burial of the 'old man', and a rising to a new life in Jesus. It indicates we have given ourselves to Jesus, and represents Christ's cleansing power in His blood. It shows us that Justification is not only pardon and forgiveness for past sins, but cleansing for the sinful heart and a bringing of the self under the control of the Holy Spirit.

It tells us about the power of Jesus to cleanse our souls and take sin out of our hearts. Jesus' power can set us free from the chains of sin, creating in us a new, kind, obedient

heart, in place of our selfish, rebellious one.

David shows this in Psalm 51:9-11: "Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities. Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. Cast me not away from thy presence; and take not thy Holy Spirit from me."

It is clearly shown that those who would enter into the Holy Place and have the New Birth must not only be forgiven but cleansed and then the white linen Ephod, pure and clean, must be put on. This represents the righteousness of Christ—synonymous with His Love, His obedience to the Law, His Divine Nature, His holiness. This is imparted to us at conversion.

All these things take place simultaneously at the New Birth. The repentant sinner accepts the death of the Savior as his death and rises as a New Creation to live the life of Christ, not only imputed to him, but imparted to him. He is justified and sanctified, forgiven, cleansed, set free from sin's hold on him and empowered to live the Christ-life by abiding in Christ.

"Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new." 2 Corinthians 5:17

Notice it doesn't say he 'will become new', but 'is become new'. This is the 'New Creation', not the 'New Evolution'.

At this point he stands before God as if he had never sinned, Christ's life covering him and living in him by the Holy Spirit. This is where many mistake; they think the Holy Spirit is something extra, given later, sort of an option, but notice what it says here:

"But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His." Romans 8:9

No Spirit—no new birth; no new birth—no forgiveness; no forgiveness—no salvation.

"Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the



kingdom of God.” John 3:3

“For not the hearers of the law are just before God, but the doers of the law shall be justified.” Romans 2:13

This shows that being given power to ‘do the law’ is a part of justification, without which there *is* no justification.

Anyone who would just receive forgiveness of sins, but not cleansing; removal of sin from the life; surrender and the new birth; putting on and wearing the robe of Christ’s righteousness; must dwell forever in the courtyard, they can approach no closer to God at all. Unless a change takes place, they can never see God in peace. The ‘Courtyard’ experience is the best the ‘new theology’ has to offer, and it is woefully inadequate. The aim of the Sanctuary is to get rid of sin entirely, not just ‘forensic substitution’.

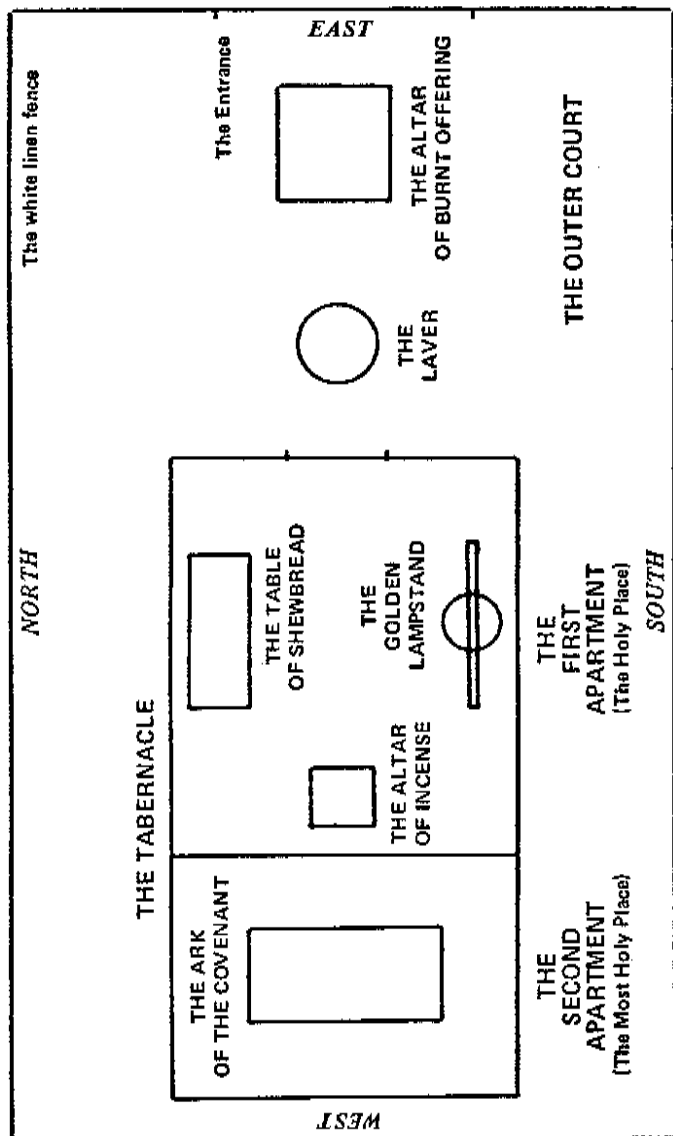
### **HOLY PLACE**

Now we are ready to enter in through the veil, into the Holy Place—the Sanctified life. Notice that Sanctified means: sacred, holy, blessed, set apart.

Because of what happened in the courtyard we now belong to Jesus. Everything in this Holy Place tells us what Jesus has given us and how He helps us to grow up in Him. You see, when we first choose to belong all the way to Jesus, we are like a little, newborn baby. Even if we are a grown-up, a new Christian is a baby Christian. He needs to be cared for and grow. Jesus takes care of us so we can grow.

Now the new-born child of God is taken into the Holy Place, a kind of nursery, where everything needful for his growth in grace is to be found. It is a quiet, sheltered place where he comes into closer personal relationship with the Godhead, who have pledged themselves to recreate and restore him. Although both justification and sanctification are received at the new birth and one cannot be had without the other; living the sanctified life is an ongoing process. This is also where cooperation between the sinner and God is emphasized.

God provides everything, Light, Power, Nourishment, Guidance, Victory, and Love, but each individual must receive and utilize all this for his self, no one else can do



it for him.

In the Holy Place we find three articles of furniture; the Table of Shewbread is for his daily food. The loaves of the Bread of Life and the unfermented wine represent the Word of God, body and blood of the Lord. On this he must feed, eating it for himself chewing it and assimilating it into his life. Just as no-one can eat for another, we all must eat for ourselves. We can share food with each other; but we must eat it and assimilate it for ourselves.

“That he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the LORD doth man live.” Deuteronomy 8:3.

The loaves had incense sprinkled on them to show us that we must always pray, before reading the Bible, for Jesus to send the Holy Spirit, to help us understand His Word. He is our own personal Teacher, and will help everyone who asks in the name of Jesus. Did you know that Jesus sends you a Teacher to help you understand the Bible? No matter if you are young or old; He will teach you if you ask Him.

The loaves were arranged carefully, showing that our study must be systematic and orderly, approaching the Word with care and prayer for the Holy Spirit's teaching. They are always fresh, showing that our experience is to be vibrant and living.

“But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.” John 14:26

The seven Lamps continually burning are God's promise to His children that they need never walk in darkness, but always they can have the light of life. God pledges to give us light always through the guidance and teaching of the Holy Spirit.

“If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.” John 7:17

“Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in

darkness, but shall have the light of life.” John 8:12

The Altar of Incense is our communication station. This is God’s pledge to be always available to us. Like the incense kept constantly burning, the prayers of His children ascend up before the throne continually, bearing praise and thanksgiving heavenward from hearts made joyful through the mercies of God and confidently presenting His promises, fragrant with His love, for all needs. Like a mother always alert to the cry of her child, so God’s ear is bent low to hear the least plea from lip or heart directed to Him through Christ.

“And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.” 1 John 5:14, 15

Thus is described to us what pure worship is. It requires participation; each must do it himself. It is not a spectator sport or an entertainment, but rather an intimate giving and receiving between the individual and God. True worship must take place on God’s terms, not man’s.

Justification is like getting married and the sanctified life is staying married; coming into Christ and abiding.

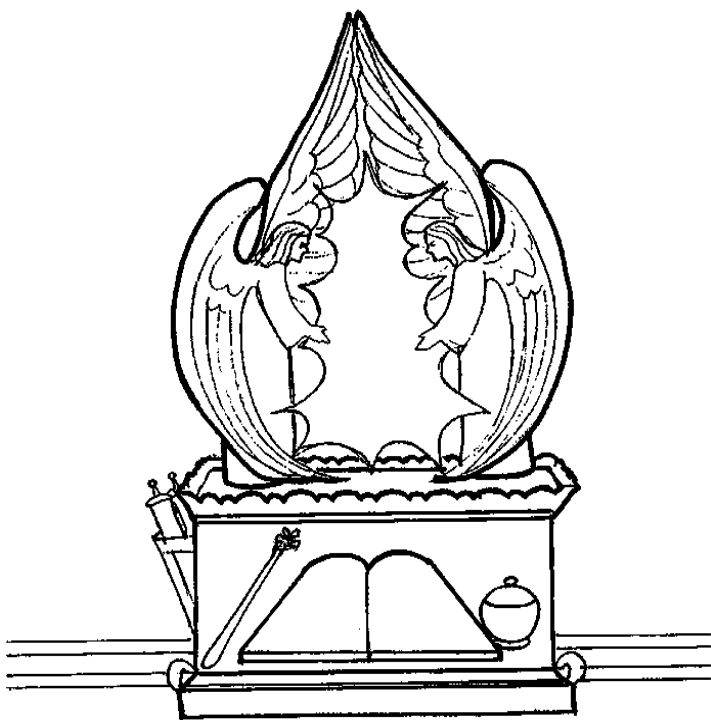
### **MOST HOLY PLACE**

Next is the Most Holy Place, representing the final sealing and glorification; man fully restored to the very presence of his God, able to see His face and live.

Behind a most beautiful red, blue and purple curtain, all full of golden pictures of angels, was the Most Holy Place. This place represented God’s throne room in heaven.

Inside was an ark, which is a Bible word that means a box. It was a beautiful golden box. Inside were three things; the two stones with the Ten Commandments on them, Aaron’s rod that budded, and a pot of Manna.

Over top of this box was a pure gold lid called the Mercy Seat. It represented the very throne of God and two angels made of gold, stood, one on each end, just like the angels that are near God’s throne in heaven. Their heads



were bowed reverently, and they looked towards God's Law in the ark, which had been written by the finger of God.

In the sanctuary on earth there was a bright, beautiful light called the Shekinah Glory there above the Mercy Seat. Do you know what that light really was? It is such a wonderful thing! It was the very presence of Jesus.

When Christ died, the inner veil was rent in twain from top to bottom; this showed that the way to the Most Holy Place was now open. No human priesthood is now needed, as Christ our Mediator and High Priest stands interceding for us, pleading the merits of His blood before His Father. We are to enter by faith, trusting only in that merit.

“Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession....Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.” Hebrews 4:14, 16

The Ark of the Covenant, like the Table of Showbread and the altar of incense was wood, covered by gold which represents the union of humanity with Divinity in Christ. It is covered by a solid gold mercy seat where the glory of God is to be seen brooding over His Law of Love, the foundation of universal government.

It contains the Tables of the Law, the Pot of Manna, and Aaron’s rod which budded.

Many spiritual lessons are seen here: the Manna shows God’s willingness and ability to provide all our needs. Aaron’s rod, a dead walking stick which came to life and in one night leafed, budded and brought forth almonds, shows us God’s willingness and ability to take the sinner, dead in trespasses and sins and restore him to life, recreate him and make him fruitful.

In the earthly service, only once a year the High Priest would enter the Most Holy on the Day of Atonement, the Day of Judgment. Now in this great antitypical Day of Atonement, we are called to be a part of the vindication of God’s character and government before the universe. Satan has accused God of having a law which man cannot obey, which would show Him to be a cruel tyrant. It is our privilege to allow God to work His complete restoration in us, restoring man to holiness and happiness. The end result of the restoration process is for man to be restored to the very presence of the Holy God; to see Him in the beauty of holiness, and live!

When we are fully surrendered and abiding in Him, we will naturally bring forth fruit unto holiness, the Power all coming from Him. Then comes the pruning, He takes off from us whatever He sees we don’t need, or that interferes with our spiritual development. The true Christian walk is a long trail of dropped habits, indulgences and worldly en-

tanglements. The life is simplified, the affections channeled heavenward. It is only this way that we can bear more fruit.

Sometimes the pruning knife is most unpleasant to us and if we decided to pull out of the vine and stop abiding, we can always do so. But if we do, we begin to wither and die, first spiritually and eventually physically.

The Sanctified life is a movement, a walk with God, not a social club or a place to sit and be entertained. Jesus said "Follow Me"; this movement ends only when we leave this earth.

"O worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness: fear before Him, all the earth." Psalms 96:9

The Hebrew here means 'in holy adornment'. This has to do with what we put on both physically and spiritually.

"Whose adorning let it not be that outward adorning of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; But let it be the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, even the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price." 1 Peter 3:3, 4

Nothing should be put on or done to direct people's attention to 'self'. Our Redemption has been purchased at a great price to God! It is our transformation that He is working for.

We are to Worship Him; it means to bow down, admire and adore Him and submit to Him. Then He fills us with power to resist sin and Satan; we win by surrendering.

"Educate the soul to cheerfulness, to thankfulness, and to the expression of gratitude to God for the great love wherewith He hath loved us . . . Christian cheerfulness is the very beauty of holiness." Child Guidance pg 146

If our life is oriented to performance, to rules and regulations, it is not joyful, but if the focus is on following Jesus, then the joy just radiates from that life.

"I am the Vine," said Christ; "ye are the branches." The closest possible connection is here represented. Engraft the leafless twig upon the flourishing vine stock, and it becomes a living branch, drawing sap and nourishment from the vine.

Fiber by fiber, vein by vein, the sapling clings, until it buds and blossoms and bears fruit. The sapless twig represents the sinner. When united to Christ, soul is joined to soul, the feeble and finite to the holy and infinite, and man becomes one with Christ. 5 Testimonies p. 591

“Religion is not to be confined to external forms and ceremonies. The religion that comes from God, is the only religion that will lead to God. In order to serve Him aright, we must be born of the divine Spirit. This will purify the heart and renew the mind, giving us a new capacity for knowing and loving God. It will give us a willing obedience to all His requirements. This is true worship. It is the fruit of the working of the Holy Spirit...” Desire of Ages p. 189

Some try to say this obedience is Legalism, but the redeemed do what they do out of Love for their Redeemer, who gave His life for them. This is Love, not Legalism. True Love obeys!

Our Redemption has been purchased at a great price to God! It is our transformation that He is working for. A religion of externals is of no value to Him, only character matters.

True worship must be in Spirit and Truth; it must be compatible with God. We can't bring in our carnal packages and then call that Worship. What happened when two rebellious priests decided to 'do their own thing' in the sanctuary and brought in 'strange fire'? They perished before the Lord! The principles of God's truth must be applied to the heart or our worship is in vain.

We must always keep in mind the Great Controversy in which we are all involved, the whole thing about the seal and the mark is about worship; Who and how will you worship. Will it be God and His Law, or self and man's laws?

**“Thy way, O God, is in the sanctuary: who is so great a God as our God?” Psalm 77:13**



# Understanding the Yearly Feasts of the Sanctuary

**SPRING CEREMONIES: 1st month****THE PASSOVER****THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD****THE WAVE SHEAF****THE FEAST OF HARVEST: PENTECOST****FALL CEREMONIES: 7th month****THE FEAST OF TRUMPETS****THE DAY OF ATONEMENT****THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES**

The sanctuary had a number of feast-days that were part of its services during the year. The feasts were the holy days, or the holidays of the Hebrew people. Their feast days, sacred gatherings at the sanctuary, began in the spring at the beginning of their ceremonial year, which lasted for seven months. There were three major gatherings for feasts.

Each feast represented something from the past. The ceremonial year was also an enacted prophecy, representing the history of this world and the plan of salvation as carried out by Jesus, the Messiah. Each feast pointed back and forward as well.

The whole system of the feasts extended symbolically from the death of Christ, His work in man's behalf, until the Redeemed are completely restored and entering heaven forever. It is a beautiful plan, and as you study these things out, you find that every part of the prophecy has been fulfilled, right up until the time in which we live, where Jesus is soon to come.

**THE PASSOVER****LOOKING BACK:**

God was preparing to rescue the Children of Israel from

Egypt, where they had been treated cruelly as slaves. He had sent Moses to speak to Pharaoh and tell him to "Let My people go!"

But Pharaoh would not listen to Moses at all. Even when plagues had well nigh ruined the land of Egypt, he still said "Who is the LORD, that I should obey his voice to let Israel go? I know not the LORD, neither will I let Israel go."

God spoke to Moses to tell the children of Israel, each family, to take a lamb from the flock. It was to be a male and have no blemish, and they were to bring it into live with them four days before the special night.

God said that He was about to strike all the firstborn of Egypt in one night! The Israelites were to kill the lamb on the evening before this terrible night, and dip hyssop in its blood, and mark their door posts and lintel with the blood of the lamb.

When the angel of death went through the Land of Egypt to do his terrible work, he would see the blood on the door and 'Pass-Over' the houses of the Israelites.

While they were waiting, the Israelites were to roast the lamb and eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. They were not to break any of its bones or leave any of the meat. Anything that was left was to be burned.

When the terrible plague struck Egypt at midnight, Orders came from Pharaoh for the Israelites to leave Egypt, which they promptly did.

Just as that happened back then, it will happen that way in the future. We who accept Jesus as our sacrifice, accept His blood in our behalf to redeem us from sin. At the end of time, when the seven last plagues are being poured on the earth, God will look at that sign of redemption upon each one of His children and the scourge will pass over them and they cannot be harmed.

### **LOOKING FORWARD:**

Egyptian bondage, in Bible prophecy, represents slavery to sin. Jesus was the true 'Passover Lamb'. Four days before His death on the cross, when the Israelites were out in

their fields getting their yearling to bring in for their sacrifice for the Passover feast, the Sanhedrin had met. They were meeting that very day, and there they decided to condemn Jesus to death; they set Him apart to die.

They determined that they would take Him and offer him up that weekend which was the Passover. If they were only reading their own prophecies, they would have realized that they were actually fulfilling them. By their evil intentions, they had set Jesus aside the same time the Passover lamb was to be set aside.

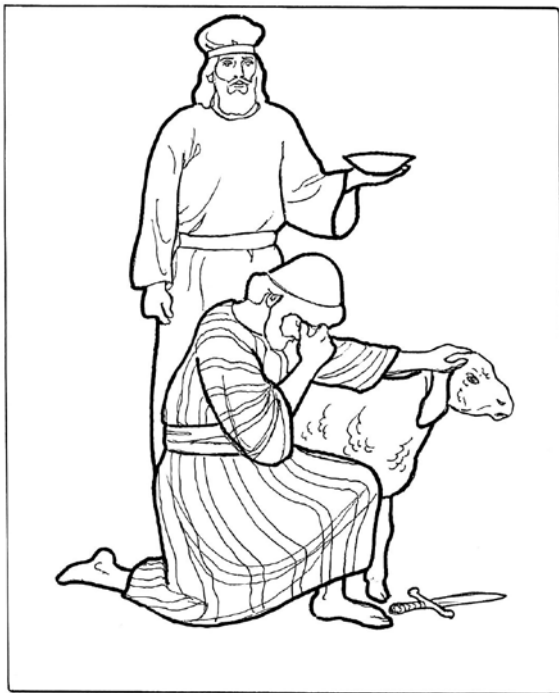
Jesus was crucified on the day that the Passover Lamb was to be slain. He died at 3 PM, the exact time the Passover Lamb was to be killed. At His death cry, a mighty earthquake struck the city of Jerusalem and split the rock on which the temple was built. The 'Rock of Ages' had been 'cleft' for us.

Jesus was put to death in the exact moment in time specified 1500 years before. Every year when the Passover lamb was offered, it was always offered at exactly the same time of day, at 3:00 o'clock in the afternoon. At that very moment, while the priests were reaching that knife to slice the throat of the Passover lamb in the sanctuary, they had Christ out on a cross and were putting Him to death outside the city.

Here they were literally putting the true Lamb of God to death, and they didn't recognize their own prophecies, that He was fulfilling. As Jesus died, He lifted His head toward heaven and cried, "Into Thy hands I commend My spirit, IT IS FINISHED!" It was exactly 3:00 o'clock when that happened.

No Bone of Him was Broken. When the Roman soldiers came to break the legs of the ones on the cross, Jesus was already dead, so they broke not His bones. Instead they pierced him with a spear. The Passover Lamb was always pierced with a spit to roast it.

At that moment the Priests were about to put the lamb in the sanctuary to death, and a tremendous earthquake took place, the only one that has been recorded in Palestine. There was no earthquake fault through that area until



that day. It could be heard coming from a distance. It was a tremendous roar, a rumbling sound, and it ripped right through Jerusalem, right through the center of the temple, and out the other side, and right through the middle of the Mountain of Olives where Jesus often spent His time in prayer with God.

It ripped that 18 foot curtain that was as thick as a man's hand, from top to bottom as it tore through the temple, and it cracked the rock that was underneath the Most Holy Place.

The priest, with upraised hand to slay the Lamb, was terrified as this heavy curtain that covered the most holy place from the gaze of the people, was torn from top to bot-

tom by an unseen hand. No human power could have torn that heavy curtain! The knife dropped from his nerveless hand and the lamb sprang free, and escaped in the confusion.

Type had met anti-type! The Lamb of God had died for the sins of the world. No longer would the offering of lambs on earthly altars have any meaning.

### **THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD**

They were to eat bread made without yeast, which was a symbol of sin; the roasted lamb, which represented Jesus; and bitter herbs to represent repentance for sin. Grape juice was to be unfermented.

#### **LOOKING BACK:**

After the Passover lamb, was offered as a sacrifice, it was to be eaten that evening, while the plague was passing over. It was to be eaten with bitter herbs and unleavened bread. Why unleavened bread? Most bread you eat has leaven or yeast in it, and that yeast grows in there and causes it to swell and permeates the whole bread. With no leaven, the bread just stays kind of hard.

That leaven represents sin in our lives and how it permeates our whole life. But they were to have no leaven in the bread, symbolizing that now that they had eaten the Passover lamb, they were under the blood of the sacrifice and protected, they had no sin in their lives any longer and they were about to be freed from the bondage of sin forever.

#### **LOOKING FORWARD:**

The feast of unleavened bread occurred while Jesus slept in the tomb. He had paid sin's penalty, now man could, if he chose, accept the provision for salvation and be forever free of the bondage of sin.

That Sabbath was 'an high day', that means the ceremonial Sabbath was falling upon the Sabbath of the law, the seventh day of the week. As Jesus rested at the end of creation week, so now at the end of His week of restoring man and dying as a sacrifice, Jesus rested again. Once as the Creator, He rested; now as the Re-Creator, the Restorer, He rested in the grave on the sacred Sabbath day sealing

forever the fact that the Sabbath is the day of rest. Jesus fulfilled that day of rest.

### **THE WAVE SHEAF:**

The Priest was to go early on the next day and pick some first ripened heads of barley to make a sheaf. Then he took it in before the Lord in the Temple, and waved it before the Lord.

### **LOOKING BACK:**

And the next day Israel went out of Egypt, away from the cruel slavery. They were free, and they went out into the wilderness to offer themselves before God. That was represented by the wave sheaf.

### **LOOKING FORWARD:**

The next morning Jesus, resurrected from the tomb, ascended to heaven to present Himself as the Wave Sheaf. He ascended to His Father at the same time that the priest was offering up the wave sheaf, and He perfectly fulfilled this symbol. Christ gave absolute evidence that He was the Promised One by fulfilling the plan of salvation in every particular.

### **THE FEAST OF HARVEST or Pentecost**

This feast was called the Pentecost as it took place after 49 days, on the 50th day. This was the time of the harvest of the grain. Before the grain could be harvested, the 'first fruits' were to be gathered and some special loaves prepared and offered before the Lord.

### **LOOKING BACK:**

Now let's look again at the first feasts. Passover commemorated the day that the Israelites offered the lamb and put that blood on the doorposts, and then went into their homes. Under the protection of that blood, they ate the body of that lamb and unleavened bread that night. Then they were released the next day to go out and worship God represented by the wave sheaf. 50 days later they were before Sinai and received God's law, the great Pentecost, when they were offering themselves before God as the first

fruits of his work of redeeming mankind.

Pentecost was actually the time that the children of Israel had left Egypt, wandering through the deserts, guided by God, they came to the plain of Sinai, and there beneath that mountain God spoke the law to them. On that day they entered into a covenant relationship with God. It represented that the fruit of God's work in bringing them out of Egypt was now before Him in the wilderness, and this was the great Pentecost.

### **LOOKING FORWARD:**

When Jesus died, there was a mighty earthquake and some of the graves were opened. When He arose from the dead early on the first day before dawn, some people were raised with him. The Bible says they went into Jerusalem and told people about the resurrection of Jesus! (Matthew 27:52, 53.)

When Jesus ascended to Heaven after 40 days, these resurrected ones went with him. They were the first fruits of the great harvest of souls that Jesus' blood would redeem from the earth.

Ten days later Jesus had presented them before His Heavenly Father and started upon His work in the heavenly Sanctuary and as a signal to His people on earth, a special outpouring of the Holy Spirit was sent to them and through the Spirit filled preaching of the Apostles, over 3,000 came into the early Christian church in one day! First Fruits were indeed presented, both in heaven and also on earth as the 'Christian' church was born.

### **THE FINAL FIRST FRUITS**

There is a second application to the presentation of the 'First-Fruits' that takes place at the end of this world's history, just before the 2nd Coming of Jesus.

We read about them in Revelation 14:3, 4: "And they sung as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth. These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they

which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb.”

When the Priests gathered the first-fruits of the harvest, they were to make flour of the grain and bake 2 loaves. “Ye shall bring out of your habitations two wave loaves of two tenth deals: they shall be of fine flour; they shall be baked with leaven; they are the firstfruits unto the LORD.” Leviticus 23:17.

Now why were these loaves to be baked with Leaven when Leaven was a symbol of sin and was not to be used in any other sacrifice? These loaves did not represent Jesus; they represented those special redeemed ones, the 144,000.

The special loaves started with ‘sin’ in them; but as they were thoroughly baked the leaven was destroyed and when they were presented, there was no live yeast in them any more!

So the 144,000 ‘first-fruits’ will go through a special time of trial and affliction and when they are finally translated to the Kingdom of Jesus, there will be no sin living in them any more forever!

They are what Jesus must present before He can bring the sin problem to an end, raise the righteous dead and take all His redeemed home.

In the ceremony, after the loaves were presented to God, they belonged to the priest. So this special group belong to the Lamb and will serve Him forever in His kingdom.

### **FALL CEREMONIES: 7th month**

The last part of the ceremonial year represented what would take place further on in time, when God would do a great work of judging the dead and cleansing his living people and preparing them for heaven.

The fall feasts would be fulfilled in the time when there was no literal sanctuary on earth. The final feast, the Feast of Tabernacles, would take place at the end of earth’s history, when God would do a closing work to prepare a people to enter the New Jerusalem.



These fall feasts started with the Feast of Trumpets sounding the warning that God's Judgment Day was coming. Second, the Day of Atonement, or the Day of Judgment. Atonement means at-one-ment, the day when God and man would be reconciled. Finally, the Feast of Tabernacles, pointing to when the redeemed would be given eternal life.

The Day of Atonement was also known as the 'Cleansing of the Sanctuary'. This is a very important service and pointed forward to the 'Time of the End' when God's Judgment of all who had ever claimed to be His people would begin. Later, in the prophecies of Daniel, the date when this would begin was told.

"And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed." Daniel 8:14

When this is figured out (see Daniel 8 & 9) it comes to 1844 AD. (457 BC - 1844 AD) At that time a special work of judging the professed people of God would begin and Jesus would pass into the Most Holy Place of the Heavenly Sanctuary. The work would begin with the dead and eventually come to the living.

It is interesting that the Prophetic book of Daniel points out the coming Judgment and most of Revelation is telling about the events surrounding this Judgment. In these two books you see one perfect picture even though they were written centuries apart. And behind it all, the great object-lesson of the Sanctuary and its services runs through it, tying it all together for those who truly seek to understand.

### **THE FEAST OF TRUMPETS**

Ten days before the Day of Atonement, the Day of Judgment and sealing, trumpets were blown throughout the entire land of Palestine. Throughout hills and valleys, the trumpets could be heard echoing through the valleys, and from mountaintop to mountaintop. The people stopped whatever they were doing.

Even the individual who was least concerned about his salvation, knew that at that time he had to drop everything,

and be sure to have his sacrifices finished, and all of his sins confessed and brought into that sanctuary. He only had ten days to do this heart-searching work.

The blowing of the trumpet signified God's loud call to repentance. Since this seventh month closes up the year's work in connection with the sanctuary service, and with the harvest, how appropriate for the trumpet to blow that the people should turn their attention more to the things of God, and prepare for the final work. Hence, this is one of the most sacred days to the Jews.

They teach that on this day, three sets of books are opened; the Book of Life to examine the good deeds of the people, the Book of Death to examine the evil deeds, and a sort of intermediary book to examine accounts of those whose cases are to be decided on the Day of Atonement ten days later. The ten days following this Sabbath day are called the Ten Days of Repentance. Even the most careless and indifferent during these days devotes time to the service of God, seeking for preparation of heart, that when the Day of Atonement arrives, he may receive a seal of life for the year to come, symbolizing the end-time seal of God's character forever.

The people put everything aside. They knew that this was their last chance that year to purify their hearts and their lives. Then as the tenth day dawned, they gathered their families around the sanctuary. All were there. This was the most important day in the year. Any Israelite, or non-Israelite that believed in the worship of the True God, who failed to be there on the Day of Atonement, were cut off from Israel and symbolically lost forever.

### **FULFILLMENT:**

A Prophetic day equals a year in real time. In 1833 the 'Falling of the Stars' occurred, and 10 years before 1844, the preaching of the message of Daniel 8:14 began in real earnest. For centuries, this book had been 'sealed', but now as the time came for the last great time prophecies to come to an end, interest sprang up all over the world in the study of the time prophecies of Daniel.

Even though the people mistakenly thought that the ‘sanctuary’ that was to be cleansed, was the earth and that the text meant that Jesus was coming back to earth that year, it still had the same effect as the sounding of those trumpets did in ancient Israel. World-wide, people began to turn their attention to the prophecies and to repent of their sins and seek the Lord.

### **THE DAY OF ATONEMENT**

On the Great Day of Atonement, the only one that was to minister in the sanctuary, was the high priest. He would enter the Most Holy Place of the sanctuary to do a special work. This was the only time in the year when anyone could enter there. But first he had to do a special work of purifying for himself:

If he was impure when he went into that sanctuary, he would die. All around the base of his robe the Lord had directed that he was to put pomegranates, and between the pomegranates, bells, so that as he walked, those bells tinkled through the sanctuary.

The congregation were holding on by faith to what was being done by the high priest. This purification was to take place in their lives by faith. They listened to the tinkling of the bells and followed his work in the sanctuary. If those bells stopped for very long, they were frightened that their high priest may have perished before the Lord.

The first thing the high priest would have to do on this special Day of Atonement, or Judgment Day, was to take extra incense and the portable incense burner (The Censer) and fill it with incense so that smoke began to billow out of it. He walked through the Holy Place of the sanctuary with incense in his hand, adding it to the fire in the incense burner in his other hand. He walked up to the curtain, beyond which he had not entered all year long, to that room where glowed that mysterious, supernatural light, the Shekinah Glory.

He went over to the edge of that curtain, and reached in with the censer, so sending a cloud of smoke in before him to veil him. This veil represented the intercession of

Jesus Christ in our behalf. Then he walked into that glorious room, before the Ark of the Covenant, where was kept the sacred Law of God. The Shekinah light blazed just before him, and he waved that smoke in front of him for protection. Then he put the incense burner down in the sanctuary. He turned around now wearing the gorgeous robes and the beautiful plate on his chest and went outside.

He took a bull calf, and offered it as a sacrifice for himself and his whole family, to purify their lives, so that he could perform this work as a fit representative of Jesus Christ, our High Priest. Then he returned through the curtain, into the Most Holy, with the blood on his fingers in one hand, and the bowl of blood in the other.

Now the room was filled with smoke representing the final intercession of Jesus in these last days in our behalf. He walked up to the Ark, and around it, for the first time he turned and faced the east. Humbly, he placed the blood on the Mercy Seat below the glowing Shekinah, the glory of the infinite God.

This turning around and facing the east symbolized the end of mediation. If he did not die, it showed that God accepted the sacrifice in his behalf, and he could carry on the work for the sanctuary and the people.

Then he went out and his garments were completely changed. He was not allowed to touch his own garments. He had to have his garments taken off for him, and the new garment, a plain, white linen ephod placed on him. His hat, undergarments, everything was changed.

Now he represented that he was not his own man, he was fulfilling the symbolism of the work of Christ. Self was to have no part in that. He represented Jesus alone.

### **THE TWO GOATS:**

Two goats had been chosen, and were tied just outside the curtain of the sanctuary, waiting through all this for their part in this last final symbol of reconciliation between God, and man, and the end of sin.

The High Priest in these new white robes, went out and lots were cast over the two goats. One was chosen to

be the Lord's goat, and the other was the 'scape-goat', the one chosen to represent Satan. He was called Azazel, and even to this day the Hebrews use the name of Azazel to represent the devil. In spiritualism at times, you also find that Satan uses the symbol of a goat, and the name Azazel.

First he took the Lord's goat, and he would *not* confess sins over that goat. This goat was a sin offering. It is called a sin offering in the Bible, but no sins were confessed over the animal. The throat was cut, and the blood was caught in a bowl. That blood represented the Sinless Life of Christ.

The first place the priest took this blood, was to the court where the blood of sin offerings had been placed upon the horns of the brazen altar, symbolizing that the people's sins had been transferred to that. He touched the horns on that altar, indicating that the sins of the people were now taken from the altar and were now carried in this blood, representing the sacrifice of Christ. It represented Jesus bearing our sins.

The priest then went into the sanctuary, to the horns of the little golden Altar of Incense, where the blood, had been faithfully taken in throughout the ceremonial year, representing the transfer of the confessed sins into the sanctuary. He touched those horns with this blood of the Lord's goat, representing that now these confessed sins were borne by Jesus, our Saviour.

Then he went up to the curtain where blood of sin offerings was sprinkled throughout the ceremonial year, and took some of the blood of the Lord's goat and sprinkled it. Thus showing that all sin on record in the sanctuary, was now taken into the blood, and borne by our Saviour in the final work He is going to do for mankind.

Those sins represent the sins that are confessed, repented of and forsaken. If anyone retained sins during this last work of Jesus Christ, those sins will stay on them.

Jesus' work, at the end of time, is to lift the sins that we have confessed and forsaken, and remove them from our lives forever. The great wonder of this last work of Atonement, is that we can have the record of sin removed

forever, and be as though we had never sinned!

But the work is not yet finished. While he is carrying all of the confessed sins of the people symbolically, he makes his way again into that Most Holy Place, just choking with incense and smoke, and approaches that glowing light. He makes his way around the Ark of the Covenant, taking this blood, now bearing all these sins, and touches the golden Mercy Seat above the Law of God, resting below the Shekinah. If he does not die, the sacrifice is accepted and he can bear those sins out of the sanctuary.

Finally, he would go out into the court, take Azazel, the other goat, that represented Satan, and the priest would place his hands over the head of that goat and he would confess all the sins that had come into the sanctuary. Symbolically, it represented that the sins that people had confessed, had now been removed from their minds, their memories and their lives, and transferred to the mind, the memory and the life of Satan, the instigator of sin.

The Scapegoat was then taken by a strong, fit man, out into a wilderness area and there he was left, never to return to the camp.

## THE DAY OF ATONEMENT

### Prophetic meaning

### FULFILLMENT:

“Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come:” Revelation 14:7

The 2300 day Time Prophecy of Daniel 8 and 9 was God’s way of telling us the progress of things in the Plan of Salvation and when the time of the Judgment would begin. When Jesus returned to heaven after His death and resurrection, He served as our Priest, interceding before God and His Law. Not with the blood of animals, as was used in the symbols here on earth, but His own perfect life and blood of His sacrifice.

As the sinner comes in prayer before God to repent and confess his sins, Jesus presents those prayers to the Father covered with His blood, that paid the penalty of the broken

Law and with the incense of His perfect, sinless Life.

But at the end of the 2300 days, (prophetic years) in 1844, on the anti-typical Day of Atonement, Jesus began the work of ‘Cleansing’ the Heavenly Sanctuary. All through the history of man, the sins have been recorded in the Heavenly Sanctuary. When we are forgiven, the Blood of Christ is applied to cover those sins; but they are *still* on the records!

“What?” You say, “I thought they just disappear? Doesn’t the Bible say God will cast them into the depth of the sea?”

Yes, but this is done after the final examining of the records in Heaven. Because all our acts have continuing effects down through the ages, the record of them must be kept until the final reckoning. We are not present at this court in person, but the records of our lives are examined.

Sin doesn’t just disappear, Someone has to pay for that sin. In the Sanctuary service it is clear that sin doesn’t just vanish. All year long the sins of the people were symbolically transferred to the Sanctuary. Then the Day of Atonement service showed how the sins were finally disposed of.

The ‘Lord’s goat’ represented the innocent Savior, whose blood became the means to remove the sin from the people by paying the penalty of the broken Law of God, for sins confessed, repented of and forsaken.

At the time when The High Priest takes that blood out of the sanctuary, symbolically carrying the sins out of the sanctuary, it represents the removal of sin’s records, and the memory of sin, from our minds and our hearts. The High Priest would leave the sanctuary, leave the glory; the incense burner would continue to build up smoke, representing that throughout this period of time Jesus, is still mediating for us.

These feasts are perfectly fulfilled with Christ as our Priest in the heavenly sanctuary. This indicates that at the end of this world’s history; in the very time in which you and I live; Christ is finishing up His work in the heavenly sanctuary. Before He comes, every one of us is to cooperate with Him in the work of putting away all sin from our lives; bringing them to the Savior, so that in the near future He can

transfer those sins and our lives will remain eternally clean.

But if He ends His work, friend, while you have unconfessed and unforsaken sins still in your life and you have not by faith placed them on the Lamb of God, and that work comes to an end; you will bear your sins forever. You will perish in the great destruction coming at the end of time. Just as those who failed to afflict their souls and repent of all sin in the time before that Great Day of Atonement in Israel were considered cut off, and no longer part of God's people.

This is the time we live in, and this work has been going on in Heaven since 1844! Just like those people back there in the time of the earthly sanctuary, today we have to carry out a similar work. As these people gathered around on this Day of Judgment, or Day of Atonement, they fasted and prayed.

One thing they did, was to take off all their jewelry, and they dressed modestly and humbly in the presence of God. They believed they were coming right into God's presence to receive their final judgment. We are in that day today. We are living just before the coming of Christ.

Revelation chapter 14 says that John saw an angel preaching the everlasting gospel to all them that dwell upon the earth, to return to proper worship of God, for the hour of His Judgment is come.

Today we are to take all of our jewelry off. Today we are to dress humbly before God, not to gather attention to ourselves, today we are to take the Spirit of Christ into our lives. Today we are to fast and pray. We are to live a healthful life, to eat that which is right, to keep our minds clear so we can afflict our souls, stay close to Jesus, and keep our mind pure, and our words pure, just as they did back then anciently.

I know some people are uncomfortable with it, but you cannot find another meaning in this sanctuary service! This is exactly what it represents. Jesus took those sins upon Himself. He bore them. He suffered for them. He shed His blood and paid the penalty for the broken Law of God.

Jesus death was not to 'do away with the Law', that



Law is as enduring as the throne of God Himself! Jesus was the Law lived out in human flesh.

His Blood pays the penalty of the broken law. His Sinless Life provides the Power to overcome sin by Faith in the indwelling Christ.

What about the second goat; Azazel, the scapegoat? When the books are examined, each person who has truly repented of their sins and accepted the Savior as their only hope, and have allowed Jesus to remove sin from their lives, cooperating with His mighty power, placing His perfect life into their characters in place of their fallen, sinful ways; then, when the sins of the people of God are removed forever from the people and the Sanctuary, those sins will be placed on the head of the father of sin, Satan, and he will have to suffer for them, because he is responsible for them.

Jesus died so that He would have the privilege of bearing sin away from us, and taking it and putting it back on Satan where it originated. It's Jesus that is our Sin Bearer and our Redeemer; but Satan is going to pay eventually for all those sins that were confessed, because he is the source of them.

You cannot fully understand what this represents unless you know the sanctuary, and then go to Revelation chapter 20. There it tells about that old serpent the devil and Satan, and a magnificent angel coming down from heaven, and binding Satan with a great chain in what is called a bottomless pit.

This symbolizes the desolation and emptiness of this earth when it is destroyed when Jesus returns and takes His people to Heaven. The wicked people will be slain by the brightness of the Lord in all His glory.

No human will be left alive on this earth. Satan will be bound here 1,000 years, bearing those sins, and looking at the destruction he has caused. Eventually, in the judgment of the wicked, after the 1,000 years, he will be destroyed in the lake of fire that purifies this earth. No human ever needed to die in that lake of fire; it was meant only for the devil and his angels. (See Matthew 25:41) The Plan of

Salvation is fully able to save the worst sinner that ever lived. But multitudes will perish there; why? Because they choose Satan's ways, love their sinful pleasures, and refuse to allow Jesus to save them *from* their sins. They will perish with the leader they chose to obey.

The high priest went back into the sanctuary, got the blood and poured it out at the foot of the altar. Then, when he went in and got that incense burner, and brought it out of the sanctuary, from before the Ark of the Covenant, into the court, it represented the end of mediation forever.

In Revelation chapter 8, you see an angel, with a golden girdle and a long gown, that represents Jesus Christ. He is standing before the golden altar, offering up incense. Then he adds fire to that censer, and throws it to the earth. That's a perfect representation of what happens in the sanctuary, representing the end of probation. John actually saw in vision Jesus ending probation, and the terrible plagues taking place on this earth after that happened.

Before that happens, God is going to seal His people with His character forever. He is going to blot out the memory of their confessed sins, and he is going to prepare them for the hour of suffering that lies ahead, and then give them eternal life at His coming. All these things are represented in the beautiful Day of Atonement service.

Oh, that people would study this subject more, so they could understand how much Jesus means to us now as we approach the end of time! We need to come unto Him by faith. We need to pray for the outpouring of His Holy Spirit that our sins may be blotted out and we will be sealed by God for all eternity.

This is a wonderful privilege that you and I have today with this knowledge, to come right in boldly, through faith, into the Most Holy Place, where Jesus Christ is still interceding for sinners, claiming only the merits of that Great Atonement, His sinless Life and His shed Blood.

Now, before the close of this earth's probation, we must plead with Him and confess our sins before Him. Confess all of them. Don't cherish any of them like some precious

keepsake. Each day make sure that your life is completely hid in Jesus Christ, and let Him live His pure life in you. Then soon, when He blots out those sins, you will be left pure for all eternity.

If you don't, Revelation tells us of that awful moment when God says, Let him that is filthy remain filthy still. Let him that is unrighteous remain unrighteous still, but he that is pure, he that is righteous, let him remain righteous still.

God, at some point in time, is going to end this terrible suffering and death in this world. He is going to separate those who will not confess or forsake sin, from those who have confessed their sins and allowed Jesus to remove them. Those who have confessed will receive eternal life, and those others will be lost forever.

Friends, don't let that hour sneak up on you. The Bible says, He will come as a thief in the night. I would urge each one of you to take the time to study out this subject.

This is what the Sanctuary service and the prophecies of the books of Daniel and Revelation are all about. Come to Jesus before it's forever too late. Give your life to Him. Accept Him as your High Priest and your Savior.

## **THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES**

### **LOOKING BACK:**

#### **Thanksgiving Day**

This feast, the final one in the ceremonial year, was in remembrance of the years Israel had lived in the wilderness. It was a time of rejoicing and remembering and recounting the goodness of God to them. It was also when the harvest was completed and they praised God for their many blessings.

The people built little booths of fresh tree branches in the streets and on the rooftops and slept out in them under the starry heavens.

This week of fellowship provided both opportunity and time for God's faithful ones to acknowledge that all their blessings had come from the hand of their bountiful heavenly Father. The Israelites felt joy that their crops were

safely gathered in, the oil pressed from olives, the grapes dried or crushed to yield their treasure, and the work of orchard and field completed for another season. It was God's design that at this time the people should reflect on His goodness and mercy. (Deuteronomy 16:13-17).

The worshipers assembled at the Sanctuary in holiday mood, prepared to present their songs of praise and their free-will offerings to God in love and gratitude for all His bounties (Leviticus 23:34-36).

### **LOOKING FORWARD:**

#### **The Feast of Tabernacles in our Father's house**

This last feast pointed forward to the time when God would deliver His people forever and they would enter into the New Jerusalem to live forever and ever under God's care.

One day the ransomed hosts will journey across the universe to attend the Feast of the Father's Harvest Home. They will then dwell in the New Jerusalem, not in temporary huts of leaves tinged with decay, but in the mansions made especially for them. (John 14:1-3). Rejoicing, not in the flickering light of lamps of clay with flaxen wicks soon to be consumed, but in the serene radiance of the Lamb; the Eternal Light of that place. (Revelation 21:23)

There they will drink satisfying draughts, not from the spring of Siloam, breaking from the dark bosom of the unfeeling rock, but from the ever-flowing river of life, eternally springing from the throne of God. (Revelation 22:1, 2)

There they will listen, not to mortal Levite choirs, but to the immortal songs of the redeemed 'kings and priests', gathered from every nation on earth, from every age, singing and making melody to God. To them the Father now calls, "Come, ye blessed. . . ."

We must not allow any earthly advantage or indulgence to cause us to fail to be there on that day. Now is the time of Salvation! Now while Christ's intercession continues in the Heavenly Sanctuary. Seek Peace with God, through Christ.

# CHRIST'S SECOND COMING

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS  
ABOUT

## CHRIST'S RETURN

FROM HEAVEN  
TO EARTH

IT WILL BE  
PERSONAL

(ACTS 1:9-11;  
1 THESS. 4:16)

IT WILL BE  
VISIBLE

(REVELATION 1:7;  
MATT. 24:30)

IT WILL BE  
AUDIBLE

(1 THESS. 4:16, 17;  
1 COR. 15:51, 52)

IT WILL BE  
GLORIOUS

(MATT. 25:31;  
MATT. 24:27)

IT WILL BE  
EARTH-  
SHAKING

(REV. 6:12-17)

THE RIGHTEOUS  
WILL BE GATH-  
ERED FROM THE  
FOUR WINDS  
(MATT. 24:31)

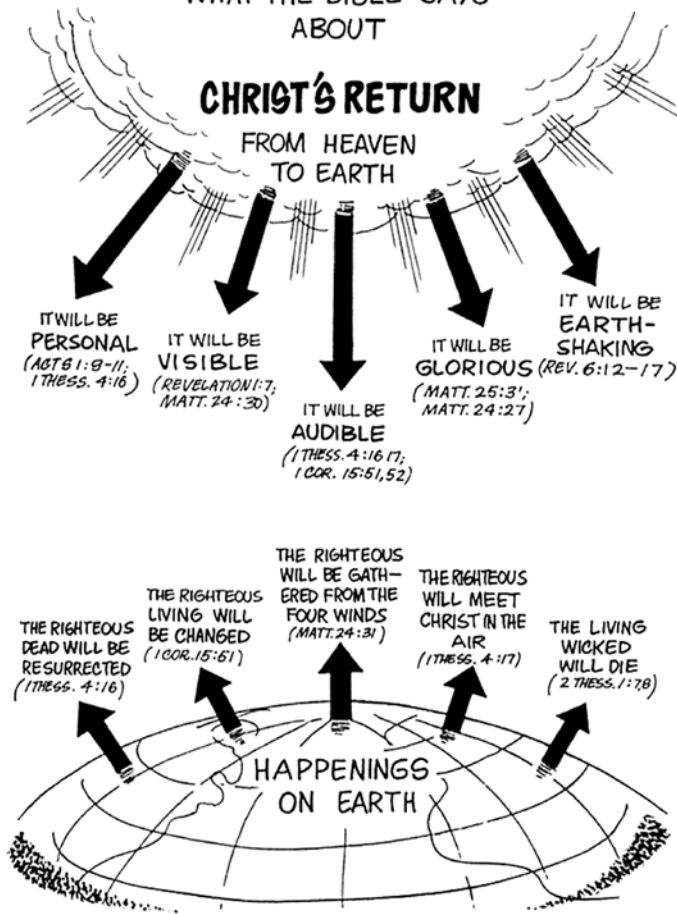
THE RIGHTEOUS  
WILL MEET  
CHRIST IN THE  
AIR  
(1 THESS. 4:17)

THE LIVING  
WICKED  
WILL DIE  
(2 THESS. 1:7, 8)

THE RIGHTEOUS  
LIVING WILL  
BE CHANGED  
(1 COR. 15:51)

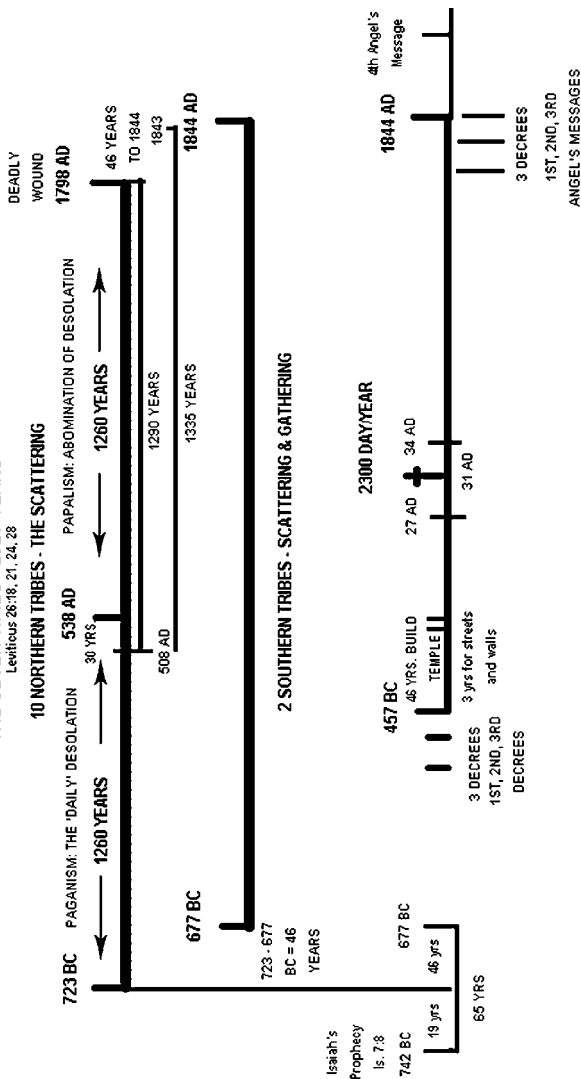
THE RIGHTEOUS  
DEAD WILL BE  
RESURRECTED  
(1 THESS. 4:16)

HAPPENINGS  
ON EARTH



# THE SEVEN TIMES - 2520 YEARS

Leviticus 26:18, 21, 24, 28



*Appendix B:*

## **Amazing Time Prophecies:**

### **The Scattering and the Gathering**

We know that the Bible, although made up of many books written at different times, is really one Book. The Author is really the Holy Spirit who inspired the prophets and apostles to write things down that God's people would especially need in the last days.

We have been looking at the prophecies especially in Daniel and Revelation, however there are many prophecies in other parts of the Bible, and some of them tie in very strongly, to give more information on those in Daniel and Revelation.

We are now going to look at a very amazing time prophecy that was given by God to Moses, and Moses showed it clearly to the Children of Israel. It was well known to the prophets of old, but in modern times it has been lost sight of until just recently, when people, studying out the prophecies and looking at the writings of the Millerite period, shortly afterward rediscovered it. We can't show everything about this prophecy in this short chapter but we will give you the basics.

When God brought the Children of Israel out from Egypt and took them into the wilderness, there to make a special 'covenant' with them, He told them that if they would agree to keep His Commandments and Statutes then they would be His people and He would be their God. The people said: "All that the Lord hath said will we do, and be obedient." Exodus 24:7, Exodus 19:8.

God gave Moses a wonderful set of Covenant Blessings, which He would do for His people if they remained faithful to Him and kept His Commandments. You can read them in Leviticus 26:1-13 and again in Deuteronomy 28:1-14.

He also gave Moses a grievous set of curses that would come upon the people if they turned away from His Commandments and Statutes and followed the ways of the hea-

then. This is called the 'Curse of Moses'. They are found in the same chapters right after the Blessings. But in Leviticus 26, we also see a phrase mentioned a total of four times: "And if ye will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins." Leviticus 26:18. It is also found in verses 21; 24; and 28.

It is not always considered that these 'Seven Times' are actually a time prophecy. A 'Time' in prophecy is a prophetic year and Seven Times would be Seven Prophetic Years. A Biblical year is 360 days, so seven times 360 equals 2520 days. With a day for a year of literal time this Seven Times comes to 2520 years.

God made it very clear that to be 'His People' and to be blessed by Him, and enter into the 'covenant' with Him, they had to keep His Laws and Statutes. Why was this? The Ten Commandment Law, is actually a transcript put into human words, of God's very character. To be His people back then or at anytime since, and to receive His special care and blessings; His Laws must be cherished and kept. Jesus said: "If ye love me, keep my Commandments." John 14:15. It is a family affair; to be children of the heavenly King we need to reflect His character and His character is found in His Law.

Those who willfully violate God's Commandments, put themselves into a position where He cannot continue to bless them, and the curses come as blessings are withheld. In these special prophecies God warns that if all His efforts to chastise them, and get them to return to obedience, fail, then He will scatter them among the heathen for 2520 years. At the end of that time He will again gather out a people, teach them to obey His Commandments, and enter into a special covenant with them.

Revelation shows us this end-time people: "Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus." Revelation 14:12.

So when did this happen to Israel? Anyone who has read the history of Israel sees how time and again they fell into heathen worship. God sent prophets and judges and bore



long with their wicked ways. Finally right after the death of King Solomon, the nation was divided into two parts, with two tribes remaining with Rehoboam, Solomon's son, and ten tribes being given to Jeroboam. The ten tribes became the Northern Kingdom, and the two were Judah or the Southern kingdom.

The 'Curse of Moses' first fell on the Northern tribes as they went deeper and deeper into apostasy and idolatry. In the year 723 BC, King Hoshea was taken prisoner by the Assyrians (2 Kings 17:4) and the ten tribes were scattered among the heathen.

The "7 times" is also called "the times of the Gentiles" and the "treading down" of God's people.

The timeline of the Northern Kingdom reaches to 1798 and can be divided into two 1260 year periods. The first Desolating Power is Paganism (perpetual, continual or Daily Desolation) for 1260 years. Then the Abomination of Desolation, Papalism, takes over in 538 AD for 1260 more years ending in 1798 when the 'deadly wound' took place. (The Times of the Gentiles)

The Southern Tribes came under their 'Curse' 46 years later in 677 BC, when King Manasseh was taken captive into Babylon. (The Second Indignation, Isaiah 7:8,9) Their experience was that of being in and out of captivity for 2520 years which ended in 1844. At this time the Lord set His hand to gather a people to enter into His Covenant, keep His Commandments and receive His blessings.

There are 46 years between the ending of the Northern Kingdom's timeline in 1798 and the Southern one in 1844. When the decree went forth to rebuild the temple in Jerusalem in 457 BC it took 46 years to build it, so it took 46 years between 1798 to gather out and prepare a people, a new spiritual temple, in 1844, to enter again into a special covenant to keep all of God's Commandments. In 1798 this 'treading down' of God's people, also known as 'the times of the Gentiles' and the 'scattering time', ended at the pope's capture by Napoleon's atheistic France.

In 1844 God set his hand the second time to gather His

people. He raised up a group in the new 'glorious land,' the United States, to carry the 3 angel's messages to the world.

The 46 year gap corresponds to when the Jews told Jesus that it took 46 years to build the temple in Jerusalem. So, God was building the Temple of His Remnant from 1798 to 1844. Literal Israel was replaced by the true Spiritual Israel, His world-wide, Sabbath-keeping people, and a new prophet was provided.

The 'Scattering Time' of both 2520 year periods is over, and we now live in the Gathering Time, when we are told: "And I will be found of you, saith the Lord: and I will turn away your captivity, and I will gather you from all the nations, and from all the places whither I have driven you, saith the Lord; and I will bring you again into the place whence I caused you to be carried away captive." Jeremiah 29:14.

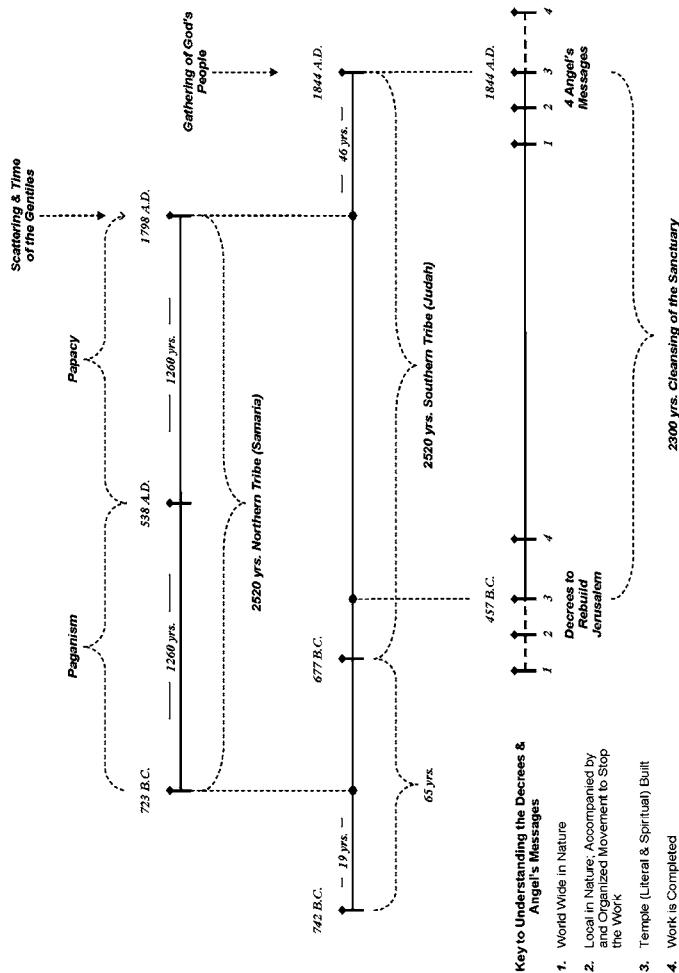
But it is important to realize that after the cross, prophecy no longer refers to literal Israel, but to spiritual Israel as God's people. "And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise." Galatians 3:29. What promise? The covenant promise that included the keeping of God's Ten Commandment Law.

Nebuchadnezzar was out eating grass for 'seven times', under God's 'indignation', which is another word that refers to this 'curse'. When Nebuchadnezzar came to the end of his 'seven times' he was restored to his throne and the Bible tells us: "I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me." Daniel 4:36

We need to understand that we are in the time period when the excellent majesty is to be placed on God's true people. One way or another, we will have a part to play. Either we will receive the Seal of God or the Mark of the Beast. Either we are going to be stamped with Christ's image and character, or we are going to receive the image of the Beast and a selfish character like the devil. Either way, there is a part to play. If we receive the excellent majesty, we will go forth conquering and to conquer, proclaiming the wonderful truths of the Bible and the glory of God to the ends of the world, or we will stay spiritually scattered,

never gathered spiritually.

We need to make a decision now, today is the day of salvation. Today if you hear His voice, harden not your hearts. (Hebrews 3:15). Probation is about to close, we need to make the choice now.



*Appendix C:*

# 7 Rules of Biblical Understanding

## *How to Study the Word of God*

**"Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path." Psalm 119:105**

**IN ORDER TO STUDY THE BIBLE AND ARRIVE AT AN ACCURATE INTERPRETATION, WE MUST BE WILLING TO ABIDE BY THE FOLLOWING PRINCIPLES:**

**1. We must believe that the whole Bible is the inspired word of God**, and we must be willing to abide by its teachings, even if they go contrary to our own personal ideas and practices.

"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness, That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works." 2 Timothy 3:16, 17.

"Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God." Matthew 4:4.

**2. We must be humble and teachable.** However great and extensive our knowledge and educational achievements, we must come humbly to the word of God, not seeking to study it from a secular standpoint, as a scientific or philosophical work, with a dependence upon human intellect. Trusting in intellectual pride and humanistic opinion, will prevent us from being able to understand the deep spiritual truths of the Bible. God requires us to come humbly and with a teachable attitude, sincerely and prayerfully seeking to understand His word. Jesus said, "I thank Thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes." Matthew 11:25

**3. We must compare scripture with scripture, letting the Bible explain itself.** It is not uncommon to find individuals and groups of people who build a whole theology upon one single statement of the Bible. This can be very dangerous and misleading. The only correct and safe way of securing an understanding of a particular truth, is to study everything that the Bible has to say about that specific topic. "Whom shall He teach knowledge? And whom shall He make to understand doctrine?... For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line, here a little, and there a little." Isaiah 28:9,10. We must study broadly, permitting the Bible to define its own terms. This will preserve us from the practice of taking an isolated passage and twisting it to fit or "prove" our own ideas. We should always approach the Bible with an open and honest attitude, willing to lay aside any established beliefs and practices, whenever we find them to be without scriptural foundation.

**4. We should ask the Holy Spirit to guide us as we study the Bible.** Though written by men, the Bible has been supernaturally inspired. We therefore need the Holy Spirit, the Author of all scripture, to guide and instruct us as we study. Prayer for divine instruction and enlightenment should always precede a study of God's word. Without heaven's assistance to render our minds spiritually receptive, it is not possible to properly interpret and appreciate the truths of the Bible, which are often hidden beneath the surface and readily missed by the casual, superficial approach. "But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? Even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which

the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” 1 Corinthians 2:10-14.

**5. We must truly want to know the truth before we can know the truth.** Our motives for studying the Bible must always be honorable and acceptable to God, if we would receive instruction and guidance from the Holy Spirit. If it is our determined purpose to research the Bible in order to find an argument against the truth, God will leave us to our own devices. For example, some people use a few scriptural verses to supposedly prove that God’s law was abolished when Jesus Christ died upon the cross. A proper method of research will clearly demonstrate that such is not the case, and the verses used to substantiate this idea, are found to be contrary when placed in their proper context. Only those who are willing to love and accept the truth when it is made plain, and do not seek to construct arguments against it, will be preserved from the dangers of self deception. God will not force us to believe anything against our will. However, His word clearly describes what will happen to those who still choose to believe, contrary to what He has plainly said: “Because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie.” 2 Thessalonians 2:10, 11.

**6. Bible study must become a priority in life.** Jesus likened the kingdom of heaven to “a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls: Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.” Matthew 13:45, 46. We must earnestly search for truth, recognizing that it is worth more than anything else in life. This quest must be made priority, especially when other things seek to crowd out the time that should be allocated to Bible study. God’s promise to us is that, “And ye shall seek me, and

find me, when ye shall search for me with all your heart.” Jeremiah 29:13. Our desire, our relish and our love for the Bible will strengthen and deepen, as we discipline ourselves to study it every day.

**7. We must live up to all the light we have, before God will teach us more.** As truth is opened to our understanding, we should determine by God’s grace to walk in its light. God has set before us an upward pathway and it is His will that we should walk in His footsteps. As our Savior therefore leads us further along the pathway of advanced truth, we must determine to follow, if we would keep in step with Him, and remain His disciple. Also, living according to the truth that we already have, qualifies us to receive more light and truth from God. “If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed; And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.” John 8:31, 32.

**“And I will walk at liberty: for I seek thy precepts. I will speak of thy testimonies also before kings, and will not be ashamed. And I will delight myself in thy commandments, which I have loved. My hands also will I lift up unto thy commandments, which I have loved; and I will meditate in thy statutes.”**

**Psalms 119:45-48**

**Not far from home! O blessed thought!  
The traveler’s lonely heart to cheer;  
Which oft a healing balm has brought,  
And dried the mourner’s tear.  
Then weep no more, since we shall meet  
Where weary footsteps never roam—  
Our trials past, our joys complete,  
Safe in our Father’s home.**

# **Rules of Prophetic Interpretation:**

**William Miller**

William Miller: (1782-1849) Wanting to know the truth regarding the supposed contradictions of the Bible, as claimed by his Deist associates, Miller began to study the Bible in a systematic fashion, using only a concordance, and comparing text with text. In so doing, he not only solved the seeming inconsistencies, but discovered an remarkable system of prophetic interpretation, which revealed amazing Time Prophecies laying out events of the last days of earth's history. He was used mightily of God in leading out in the Great Advent Awakening of the mid 1800s. Here are the rules he used in his study:

In studying the Bible, I have found the following rules to be of great service to myself, and now give them to the public by special request. Every rule should be well studied, in connection with the scripture references, if the Bible student would be at all benefited by them.

## **RULE I.**

Every word must have its proper bearing on the subject presented in the Bible.

PROOFS: Matthew 5:18.

## **RULE II.**

All scripture is necessary, and may be understood by a diligent application and study.

PROOFS: 2 Timothy 3:15, 16, 17.

## **RULE III.**

Nothing revealed in the scripture can or will be hid from those who ask in faith, not wavering.

PROOFS: Deuteronomy 29:29. Matthew 10:26, 27.



1 Corinthians 2:10. Philippians 3:15. Isaiah 14:11. Matthew 21:22. John 14:13, 14. 15:7. James 1:5,6. 1 John 5:13, 14, 15.

**RULE IV.**

To understand doctrine, bring all the scriptures together on the subject you wish to know; then let every word have its proper influence, and if you can form your theory without a contradiction, you cannot be in an error.

PROOFS: Isaiah 28:7-29. 35:8. Proverbs 29:27. Luke 24:27, 44, 45. Romans 16:26. James 5:19. 2 Peter 1:19, 29.

**RULE V.**

Scripture must be its own expositor, since it is a rule of itself. If I depend on a teacher to expound it to me, and he should guess at its meaning, or desire to have it so on account of his sectarian creed, or to be thought wise, then his guessing, desire, creed or wisdom is my rule, not the Bible.

PROOFS: Psalm 19:7, 8, 9, 10, 11. 119:97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105. Matthew 23:8, 9, 10. 1 Corinthians 2:12, 13, 14, 15, 16. Ezekiel 34:18, 19. Luke 11:52. Malachi 2:7, 8.

**RULE VI.**

God has revealed things to come, by visions, in figures and parables, and in this way the same things are often-time revealed again and again, by different visions, or in different figures, and parables. If you wish to understand them, you must combine them all in one.

PROOFS: Psalm 89:19. Hosea 12:10. Habakkuk 2:2. Acts 2:17. 1 Corinthians 10:6. Hebrews 9:9, 24. Psalm 78:2. Matthew 13:13, 34. Genesis 41:1-32. Daniel 2. 7. and 8. Acts 10:9-16.

**RULE VII.**

Visions are always mentioned as such.

PROOFS: 2 Corinthians 12:1.

**RULE VIII.**

Figures always have a figurative meaning, and are used much in prophecy, to represent future things, times and events; such as mountains, meaning governments; beasts, meaning kingdoms. Waters, meaning people. Lamp, meaning Word of God. Day, meaning year.

PROOFS: Daniel 2:35, 44. 7:8, 17. Revelation 17:1, 15. Psalm 119:105. Ezekiel 4:6.

**RULE IX.**

Parables are used as comparisons to illustrate subjects, and must be explained in the same way as figures by the subject and Bible. Mark 4:13.

**RULE X.**

Figures sometimes have two or more different significations, as day is used in a figurative sense to represent three different periods of time.

PROOFS: Ecclesiastes 7:14.

1. Indefinite.
2. Definite, a day for a year.
3. Day for a thousand years.

If you put on the right construction it will harmonize with the Bible and make good sense, otherwise it will not.

PROOFS: Ezekiel 4:6. 2 Peter 3:8.

**RULE XI.**

How to know when a word is used figuratively. If it makes good sense as it stands, and does no violence to the simple laws of nature, then it must be understood literally, if not, figuratively.

PROOFS: Revelation 12:1, 2. 17:3-7.

**RULE XII.**

To learn the true meaning of figures, trace your figurative word through your Bible, and where you find it explained, put it on your figure, and if it makes good sense

you need look no further, if not, look again.

### **RULE XIII.**

To know whether we have the true historical event for the fulfilment of a prophecy. If you find every word of the prophecy (after the figures are understood) is literally fulfilled, then you may know that your history is the true event. But if one word lacks a fulfilment, then you must look for another event, or wait its future development. For God takes care that history and prophecy doth agree, so that the true believing children of God may never be ashamed.

PROOFS: Psalm 22:5. Isaiah 45:17, 18, 19. 1 Peter 2:6. Revelation 17:17. Acts 3:18.

### **RULE XIV.**

The most important rule of all is, that you must have faith. It must be a faith that requires a sacrifice, and, if tried, would give up the dearest object on earth, the world and all its desires, character, living, occupation, friends, home, comforts, and worldly honors. If any of these should hinder our believing any part of God's word, it would show our faith to be vain. Nor can we ever believe so long as one of these motives lies lurking in our hearts. We must believe that God will never forfeit His word. And we can have confidence that He that takes notice of the sparrow, and numbers the hairs of our head, will guard the translation of His own word, and throw a barrier around it, and prevent those who sincerely trust in God, and put implicit confidence in his word, from erring far from the truth, though they may not understand Hebrew or Greek.\*

\*Note: We suggest that all who can use a computer acquire the "Power Bible" which allows one to do easy Greek and Hebrew word studies in the KJV quickly and accurately. It is one of the best, and very economical and easy to use. <http://www.powerbible.com>

# The Science of Prayer

## *The ABC's*

The method of claiming Bible promises is summed up in the book "Education," pages 253 and 258.

### **A—Ask: Matthew 7:7.**

"For any gift He has promised, we may ask."

### **B—Believe: Mark 11:22-24.**

"Then we are to believe that we receive."

### **C—Claim: John 11:41.**

Then we are to "return thanks to God that we have received." Why return thanks that we have received?

Because:

1. The word of God is seed. Luke 8:11.
2. The seed contains not merely the component elements of the tree, but the tree itself. "The oak is in the acorn." Education, p. 253.

Rutherford Platt, a prize-winner in science, states in his book "This Green World," that a trunk, two leaves and roots are already contained in the embryo of the seed, and that with a powerful magnifying glass they could be seen.

3. Therefore, "If we receive the promise, we have the gift." Education, p. 253.

"The gift is in the promise." Id., p. 258.

"One sentence of Scripture is of more value than ten thousand of man's ideas or arguments." Testimonies, 7, p. 71.

So with your Bible in your hands say, "I have done as Thou hast said. I Present Thy promise." Christ's Object Lessons, p. 146. Remember, the condition to victory is to Ask, Believe, and Claim by receiving. So, take the Book of Promises right in your hands as you pray.

Then do as Augustine's mother did, "She laid her finger upon the texts, presenting before God His own words, and pleaded as only a mother can, and the Lord gave her the desire of her heart." Testimonies, Vol. 5, pp. 322, 323.

You and I though utterly unworthy, may do the same.

We may place our fingers right on the promise of a living, true, almighty, wise, loving, and willing God. Then we are to tell Him, there on our knees, that we believe, and have received the gift promised. We can tell Him we know we shall realize the fulfillment when we need it most. But now we accept it by simple, living faith.

Arising from our knees we may continue, in our hearts, asking, believing and claiming exultantly what God has promised.

If we are but willing to conform to the conditions: "That thy trust may be in the Lord, I have made known to thee this day, even to thee." Proverbs 22:19.

"If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?" Luke 11:13.

### **1. Think of God looking for someone to aid.**

"For the eyes of the Lord run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to shew himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect [or, sincerely fixed] toward him." 2 Chronicles 16:9.

### **2. Let us look to Calvary and capture the true picture of God.**

"He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?" Romans 8:32.

### **3. Think of God as often giving us something better than we ask.**

"I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known; ... and not forsake them." Isaiah 42:16.

So for us to picture God as saying, "No, period!" is misrepresenting Him. God never says to His believing child, "No, period." He may sometimes say, "No, comma," meaning, "You are not asking for one quarter as much as I want to give you!"

"Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us," Ephesians 3:20.

Here we see a picture of God as being eager to do so much more for us than we ask, that our asking appears pitifully short of what He wants to give us.

#### **4. Think of God as truthful.**

“God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?” Numbers 23:19.

A minister, who read the Old Testament Scriptures through 69 times and the New Testament Scriptures 71 times, discovered at least 3,573 promises there. Others claim to have found more, even up to 7,000 or 8,000.

Hebrews 6:18 declares that it is impossible for God to lie.

#### **5. Think of God as powerful enough to bring solutions.**

“By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. . . For he spake, and it was.” Psalm 33:6,9.

“Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God.” Hebrews 11:3.

Romans 4:17, “God, . . . calleth those things which be not as though they were.”

Psalm 33:9, “He spake, and it was.”

Putting the two passages of Scripture together, it says, in effect, that anything that does not exist, does exist the moment God’s creative word names it. This is our creator God.

#### **6. God requires of us childlike faith.**

“Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.” Matthew 18:3.

#### **7. We are to visualize the solution.**

Jesus taught us to offer a prayer that asks, believes, and then actually receives, or claims, the solution without doubting, because what God says is so, even though our own minds cannot comprehend it all.

#### **8. Claiming God’s Creative Promises.**

“Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.” 2 Peter 1:4.

“Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.” Psalm 51:10.

“Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you.” John 15:3.

### **Faith**

Prayer and faith are closely allied, and they need to be studied together. In the prayer of faith there is a divine science; it is a science that everyone who would make his lifework a success must understand. Christ says, “What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.” Mark 11:24. He makes it plain that our asking must be according to God’s will; we must ask for the things that He has promised, and whatever we receive must be used in doing His will. The conditions met, the promise is unequivocal.

For the pardon of sin, for the Holy Spirit, for a Christlike temper, for wisdom and strength to do His work, for any gift He has promised, we may ask; then we are to believe that we receive, and return thanks to God that we have received.

We need look for no outward evidence of the blessing. The gift is in the promise, and we may go about our work assured that what God has promised He is able to perform, and that the gift, which we already possess, will be realized when we need it most. Education 258.

Faith is trusting God; believing that He loves us and knows best what is for our good. Thus, instead of our own, it leads us to choose His way. In place of our ignorance, it accepts His wisdom; in place of our weakness, His strength; in place of our sinfulness, His righteousness. Our lives, ourselves, are already His; faith acknowledges His ownership and accepts its blessing. Truth, uprightness, purity, have been pointed out as secrets of life’s success. It is faith that puts us in possession of these principles. Education 253.

## For More Information

**These Books are Available in single copy and case-lots from:**

**“The Foundations and Pillars Ministry”  
1204 Besstown Rd  
Beersheba Springs TN 37305**

**<http://www.heavenly-light.org/>**

‘Understanding Daniel and the Revelation’ online,  
and in MP3: <http://understanding-daniel-revelation.com/>

For more on Bible Prophecy visit:  
<http://www.remnant-prophecy.com/>

For further study visit this online Video Prophecy  
School: <http://theseventhunders.com/>

Other Prophecy Sites:

USA: [www.future-news.org](http://www.future-news.org)

Canada: [www.futurenews.ca](http://www.futurenews.ca)

Europe: [www.future-news.eu](http://www.future-news.eu)

**For additional literature, please contact the address below.**

